



C O O K ' s V O , Y A G E

T O T H E

P A C I F I C O C E A N .

V O L . I I .



A  
V O Y A G E  
TO THE  
P A C I F I C O C E A N;  
Undertaken by Command of his MAJESTY,  
FOR MAKING  
D I S C O V E R I E S  
IN THE  
N O R T H E R N H E M I S P H E R E:

Performed under the Direction of  
Captains COOK, CLERKE, and GORE,  
In the Years 1776, 1777, 1778, 1779, and 1780.

Being a copious, comprehensive, and satisfactory Abridgement of the

V O Y A G E

WRITTEN BY

Captain JAMES COOK, F. R. S.

AND

Captain JAMES KING, LL. D. and F. R. S.

Illustrated with CUTS.

---

In F O U R V O L U M E S.

---

V O L. II.

---

London:

PRINTED FOR SCATCHERD & WHITAKER, AND C. STALKER,  
STATIONERS-COURT, LUDGATE-STREET.

MDCCCLXXXVIII.





# C O N T E N T S.

## B O O K III.

OCCURRENCES AT OTAHEITE AND THE SOCIETY ISLES; AND PROSECUTION OF THE VOYAGE TO THE COAST OF NORTH-AMERICA.

## C H A P IV.

*Considerations about sailing—A Peace or Truce with Eimeo on disadvantageous Terms—Otoo's Delay in sending Reinforcements censured—A Solemnity at the Morai on the Peace—Observations thereon—Otoo's Address and Art—Omai receives a Present of a War Canoe—Embellishes it with Variety of Streamers—Otoo's Present to his Majesty—Account of the Modes of Traffic, and the friendly Treatment we received at Otaheite—The Expedition of some Spaniards—Their Endeavours to inculcate a mean Opinion of the English—Omai jealous of another Traveller* Page 1

## C H A P. V.

*Anchor at Taloo in Eimeo—The Harbours of Taloo and Parowoaab described—Visit from Mabeine, the Chief of Eimeo, who approaches with Caution—Description of the Person of Mabeine—Preparations made for sailing—Detained by having a Goat stolen—That recovered, and another stolen—Menaces used to occasion it to be returned—Exce-*  
VOL. II. b dition

*dition cross the Island, with a Party, in search of the Goat—Houses and Canoes burnt, and other Hostilities threatened—The Goat returned—The Island described, &c.* Page 21

#### C H A P. VI.

*The Ships arrive at Huaheine—Assembly of the Chiefs—Omai's Harangue—His Establishment in this Island unanimously agreed to—A House built for him—Steps taken to ensure his Safety—The Ships infested with Cock-roaches—Detection and Punishment of a Thief—He escapes from his Confinement—Animals left with Omai—His European Weapons—His Entertainments—Inscription on his House—His Behaviour at parting—Remarks on his general Conduct—His Character—Account of the two New-Zealanders who remained with him.* 34

#### C H A P. VII.

*Arrival at Ulitea—One of the Marines deserts, but is brought back by Captain Cook—Intelligence from Omai—Instructions to Captain Clerke—Two others desert—The two Captains seek them in vain—The Chief's Son, Daughter, and her Husband, confined on board the Discovery—Unsuccessful Conspiracy of the Natives against the Captains—The two Deserters are recovered—The Chief's Family set at Liberty—The Ships sail—Remarks on the Uliteans—Present and former State of their Island.* 55

#### C H A P. VIII.

*Proceed to Bolabola, accompanied by Oreo and others—Application to Opsony for Monsieur de Bougainville's*

*gainville's Anchor—Reasons for purchasing it—  
 Delicacy of Opōny, in not accepting the Present  
 ---Quit the Society Islands—Description of Bola-  
 bola; and its Harbour—Curious History of the  
 Reduction of the two Islands, Otaba and Ulietea  
 ---Bravery of the Men of Bolabola—Account of  
 the Animals left at Bolabola and Ulietea---Process  
 of salting Pork—Cursory Observations respecting  
 Otaheite, and the Society Islands.* Page 71

## CHAP. IX.

*Strictures on former Accounts of Otaheite—The pre-  
 vailing Winds—Beauty and Fertility of the Coun-  
 try—Land but little cultivated—Produce—Na-  
 tural Curiosities—Description of the Natives—  
 Delicacy of the Women—Their general Charac-  
 ter—Disposed to amorous Gratifications—Their  
 Language—Ignorance of Surgery and Physic—  
 Animal Food chiefly eaten by the superior Class—  
 Pernicious Effects of Ava—Account of their dif-  
 ferent Meals—Connections between the two Sexes  
 ---Circumcision—Religion—Notions concerning Im-  
 mortality—Superstitions—Strange Traditions about  
 the Creation—The King almost deified—Classes  
 of the People—Punishments—Peculiarities of  
 the adjacent Islands—Limits of their Navi-  
 gation.* 83

## CHAP. X.

*Prosecution of our Voyage, after our Departure from  
 the Society Isles—Christmas Island discovered—  
 Supplies of Fish and Turtle—Solar Eclipse—  
 Distress of two Seamen who had lost their Way—  
 Singular Mode of refreshing himself practised by  
 one of these Spragglers—Inscription left in a Bot-*  
 b 2 116

*the—Soil of the Island described—Trees and Plants—Birds, and other Animals—Further Particulars respecting Christmas Island.* Page 117

## CHAP. XI.

*Three Islands discovered—The Inhabitants of Atooi approach us in their Canoes—Their Persons described—Some of them venture on board—Their Amazement on that Occasion—Precautions against importing the Venereal Disease into the Island—One of the Natives killed—The Ships cast Anchor—The Commodore's Reception on landing—His Excursion into the Country, with Messrs. Webber and Anderson—Description of a Morai and its Obelisk—The Custom of offering human Victims prevalent among these People—Curious feathered Cloaks and Caps—The Resolution driven from Atooi Road—The Isle of Oneeheow visited—Some of our People are detained on Shore—Animals and Seeds left at Oneeheow—Customs of the Natives—The Ships proceed to the northward.* 128

## CHAP. XII.

*Situation of the Islands now discovered by us—The Name of Sandwich Islands given to the whole Group—Atooi particularly described—Its Soil—Climate—Vegetable Produce—Birds—Fish—Domestic Animals—The Persons and Disposition of the Natives—Estimate of their Number—Their Dress and Ornaments—Houses—Food—Mode of Cookery—Diversions—Musical Instruments—Manufactures—Tools—Their Acquaintance with Iron accounted for—Their Canoes described—Agriculture—Account of one of their Chiefs, who visited*

*visited Captain Clerke—Their Weapons—Affinity between their Manners and those of the Society and Friendly Islanders—Their Language—Advantageous Situation of the Sandwich Isles.*

Page 160

### C H A P. XIII.

*Observations on the Longitude, Tides, &c.—Proceed on the Voyage—Weather remarkably mild as far as the Latitude 44° North—Scarcity of Oceanic Birds in the Northern Hemisphere—Beautiful Sea-Animals described, supposed by Mr. Anderson to be a new Species of Oniscus—See the Coast of North America—Description of the Country—Difficulties at Cape Foulweather—Stormy and tempestuous Weather—Strictures on Martin d'Anguilar's River—Fallacy of Juan de Fuca's pretended Strait—An Inlet discovered—The Ships anchor there, and are visited by Number of the Natives—Their Behaviour.*

194

---

## B O O K IV.

TRANSACTIONS WITH THE NATIVES OF NORTH-AMERICA; DISCOVERIES ON THAT COAST AND THE EASTERN EXTREMITY OF ASIA, AND RETURN SOUTHWARD TO THE SANDWICH ISLANDS.

### C H A P. I.

*Arrival at the Sound—Meor in an excellent Harbour—Visited by great Numbers of the Natives,*

*who*

*who are an inoffensive Race of People—Variety of Articles brought to Barter, particularly human Skulls—Mischievous Thefts committed—The Observatories erected on a Rock—Also a Forge erected—Alarmed at seeing the Natives arm themselves—Distant Tribes not permitted by the Natives to traffic with us—Tempestuous Weather—A Survey of the Sound—Friendly Behaviour of the Natives of one of the Villages—Treatment received from an inhospitable Chief—Greeted with a Song by young Women—A second Visit to one of the Villages—Grafts purchased—Departure of the Ships. Page 209*

C H A P. II.

*Directions for sailing into the Sound—The adjacent Country described—Remarks on the Weather and Climate—Trees and other vegetable Productions—Racoons, Martins, Squirrels, and other Quadrumedus—Variety of Skins brought for Sale—Whales, and other Sea Animals—The Sea Otter described—Birds—Oceanic Birds—Fish—Shell Fish—Snakes and Lizards—Insects—Stones—Description of the Natives—Their Colour—Formation—Dress and Ornaments—Particular Dresses, and horrible wooden Masks—Leathern Mantle for War—Their Dispositions—Songs—Musical Instruments—Their Fondness for Metals, which they take every Opportunity of stealing. 229*

C H A P. III.

*Number of Inhabitants at Nootka Sound—Manner of building their Houses—Description of their Inside, Furniture, and Utensils—Their Filthiness—Wooden*

*—Wooden Images, called Klumna—Employments of the Men—Indolence of the young Men—Of the Women, and their Employments—Different Sorts of Food, and Manner of preparing it—Bows—Arrows—Spears—Slings, and other Weapons—Manufactures of Woollen, &c.—Mechanic Arts—Design and Execution in Carving and Painting—Canoes—Implements used in Hunting and Fighting—Iron Tools common among them—Manner of procuring that, and other Metals—Language, &c.*

Page 252

## C H A P. IV.

*A Storm—The Resolution springs a Leak—Progress of the Ships along the North-American Coast—An Inlet named Cross Sound—Beering's Bay—Cape Suckling—Account of Kaye's Island—Our Ships anchor near Cape Hinchingbroke—The Natives visit us—Their Fondness for Beads and Iron—Their daring Attempt to carry off one of our Boats—They also attempt to plunder the Discovery—Progress up the Sound—Mr. Gore and the Master sent to examine its Extent—Montague Island—The Ships leave the Sound.*

275

## C H A P. V.

*Extent of Prince William's Sound—The Persons of its Inhabitants described—Their Dress—Remarkable Custom of making an Incision in the Under-lip—Their various Ornaments—Canoes—Weapons—Armour—Domestic Utensils—Their Skill in all manual Works—Their Food—A Specimen of their Language—Quadrupeds—Birds—Fish—Trees—Conjectures whence they procure Beads and Iron.*

300

## C H A P.



## CHAP. VI.

*Proceed along the Coast—Cape Elizabeth—Cape St. Hermogenes—Beering's Voyage and Chart very defective—Point Banks—Barren Isles—Cape Douglas—Cape Bede—Mount St. Augustin—Endeavour to find a Passage up an Inlet—Both Ships make a Progress up it—Convincing Proofs of its being a River—A Branch of it called River Turnagain—The great River named Cook's River—The Ships return—Several visits from the Natives—Lieutenant King lands, displays a Flag, and takes Possession of the Country—His Reception by the Natives—The Resolution strikes upon a Bank—The high Tides accounted for.*

Page 317

## CHAP. VII.

*Departure from Cook's River—Pass St. Hermogenes—Cape Whitsunday—Whitsuntide Bay—Cape Greville—Cape Barnabas—Two-headed Point—Trinity Island—Beering's Foggy Island—Foggy Cape—Pinnacle Point—Description of a curious Bird—Account of the Schumagin Islands—A Russian Letter brought on board the Discovery—Various Conjectures concerning it—Rock Point—Halibut Island—Halibut Head—A Volcano—Escape providentially—Arrival at Oonalashka—Traffic with the Natives there—Another Russian Letter brought on board—Description of the Harbour of Samganoobda.*

339

A  
V O Y A G E  
TO THE  
P A C I F I C O C E A N.

B O O K III.

OCCURRENCES AT OTAHEITE AND THE SOCIETY  
ISLES; AND PROSECUTION OF THE VOYAGE TO  
THE COAST OF NORTH-AMERICA.

---

C H A P. IV.

*Considerations about sailing—A Peace or Truce with Eimeo on disadvantageous Terms—Otoo's Delay in sending Reinforcements censured—A Solemnity at the Morai on the Peace—Observations thereon—Otoo's Address and Art—Omai receives a Present of a War Canoe—Embellishes it with Variety of Streamers—Otoo's Present to his Majesty—Account of the Modes of Traffic, and the friendly Treatment we received at Otahete—The Expedition of some Spaniards—Their Endeavours to inculcate a mean Opinion of the English—Omai jealous of another Traveller.*

OTOO, and his father, came on board, in the morning of the 22d, to know when Captain Cook proposed sailing. For, hearing

that there was a good harbour at Eimeo, he had informed them, that he should visit that island on his passage to Huaheine; and they proposed to accompany him, and that their fleet should sail at the same time, to reinforce Tōwha. Being ready to take his departure, he submitted to them the appointment of the day; and the Wednesday following was determined upon; when he was to receive on board Otoo, his father, mother, and the whole family. These points being agreed on, the Captain proposed immediately setting out for Oparre, where all the fleet was to assemble this day, and to be reviewed.

As Captain Cook was getting into his boat, news arrived that a treaty had been concluded between Towha and Maheine, and Towha's fleet had returned to Attahooroo. From this unexpected event, the war canoes, instead of rendezvousing at Oparre, were ordered to their respective districts. Captain Cook, however, followed Otoo to Oparre, accompanied by Mr. King and Omai. Soon after their arrival, a messenger arrived from Eimeo, and related the conditions of the peace, or rather truce, it being only for a limited time. The terms being disadvantageous to Otaheite, Otoo was severely censured, whose delay, in sending reinforcements, had obliged Towha to submit to a disgraceful accommodation. It was even currently reported, that Towha, resenting the treatment he had received, had declared that,

immediately after Captain Cook's departure, he would join his forces to those of Tiaraboo, and attack Otoo. This called upon the Captain to declare, that he was determined to espouse the interest of his friend; and that whoever presumed to attack him, should experience the weight of his displeasure, when he returned to their island.

This declaration, probably, had the desired effect, and, if Towha did entertain any such hostile intention at first, we heard no more of the report. Whappai, the father of Otoo, highly disapproved of the peace, and censured Towha for concluding it. This old man wisely considered that Captain Cook's going with them to Eimeo, might have been of singular service to their cause, though he should not interfere in the quarrel. He therefore concluded, that Otoo had acted prudently in waiting for the Captain; though it prevented his giving that early assistance to Towha which he expected.

While we were debating on this subject at Oparre, a messenger arrived from Towha, desiring the attendance of Otoo the next day, at the *morai* in Attahooroo, to return thanks to the gods for the peace he had concluded. Captain Cook was asked to attend; but being much out of order, chose rather to decline it. Desirous, however, of knowing what ceremony might be exhibited on so memorable an occasion, he sent Mr. King and Omai to observe the particulars, and returned to

his ship, attended by Otoo's mother, his three sisters, and several other women. At first, the Captain imagined that this numerous train came into his boat in order to get a passage to Matavai. But they assured him, they intended passing the night on board, for the purpose of curing the disorder he complained of; which was a rheumatic pain, extending from the hip to the foot. He accepted the friendly offer, had a bed prepared for them upon the cabin floor, and submitted himself to their directions. He was first desired to lie down amongst them; when all those who could get near him, began to squeeze him with both hands all over the body, but more particularly on the parts complained of, till they made his bones crack, and his flesh became almost a mummy. In short, after suffering this severe discipline about a quarter of an hour, he was happy to get away from them. The operation, however, gave him immediate relief, and encouraged him to a repetition of the same discipline, before he retired to bed; and it was so effectual, that he found himself pretty easy the whole night after. His female physicians very obligingly repeated their prescription the next morning, before they left him, and again in the evening when they returned; after which, the cure being perfected, they took their leave of the Captain the following morning. This is called *romee*, among the natives, an operation far exceeding that of the flesh-brush,

brush, or any external friction. It is universally practised amongst these islanders, and generally by women. If, at any time, a person appears languid and tired, and sits down by any of them, they practise the *romee* upon his legs; and it always has an excellent effect.

On Thursday the 25th of September, Otoo, Mr. King, and Omai, returned from Attahooroo; and Mr. King gave a narrative of what he had seen to the following effect: "At sun-set, we embarked in a canoe, and left Oparre. About nine o'clock we landed at the extremity of Tet-taha, which joins to Attahooroo. The meeting of Otoo and Towha, I expected, would be interesting. Otoo and his attendants seated themselves on the beach, near the canoe, in which Towha sat. He was then asleep; but being awakened, and Otoo's name being mentioned to him, a plantain-tree and dog were immediately laid at Otoo's feet; and several of Towha's people came and conversed with him. After I had been, for some time, seated close to Otoo, Towha neither stirring from his canoe, nor saying any thing to us, I repaired to him. He asked me if *Toote* was displeased with him? I answered, No; and that he was his *taio*; and that I was ordered to go to Attahooroo, to let him know it. Omai then entered into a long conversation with this chief; but I could not gather any information from him. On my returning to Otoo, he desired that I should

go to eat, and then to sleep; in consequence of which Omai and I left him. On questioning Omai on that head, he said, Towha was lame, and therefore could not stir; but that Otoo and he would soon converse together in private. This was probably true; for those we left with Otoo came to us in a little time; and about ten minutes after, Otoo himself arrived, when we all went to sleep in his canoe.

The *ava* was the next morning in great plenty. One man drank to such excess that he lost his senses, and appeared to be convulsed. He was held by two men, who busied themselves in plucking off his hair by the roots. I left this spectacle to see a more affecting one. It was the meeting of Towha and his wife, and a young girl, who was said to be his daughter. After the ceremony of cutting their heads, and discharging plenty of blood and tears, they washed, embraced the chief, and seemed perfectly unconcerned. But the young girl's sufferings were not yet concluded. Terri-*diri* (Oberea's son) arrived; and she, with great composure, repeated those ceremonies to him which she had just performed on meeting her father. Towha having brought a war canoe from Eimeo, I inquired if he had killed the people belonging to her; and was informed, that there was not a person in her when she was captured.

About ten or eleven o'clock we left Tettaha, and landed close to the *morai* of Attahooroo early  
in

in the afternoon. Three canoes lay hauled upon the beach, opposite the *morai*, having three hogs in each. We expected the solemnity would have been performed the same afternoon; but nothing was done, as neither Towha nor Potatou had joined us. A chief came from Eimeo with a small pig, and plantain-tree, which he placed at Otoo's feet. They conversed some time together; and the Eimeo chief often repeating the words, *Warry, Warry*, "false," Otoo was probably relating to him what he had heard, and the other contradicted it.

The next day, Towha and Potatou, with seven or eight large canoes, arrived, and landed near the *morai*. Several plantain-trees were brought to Otoo, on behalf of different chiefs. Towha remained in his canoe. The ceremony was commenced by the principal priest, who brought out the *maro*, wrapped up, and a bundle of a conic shape. These were placed at the head of what I suppose to be a grave. Then three priests sat down, at the other end of the grave; having with them a plantain-tree, a branch of some other kind of tree, and the sheath of the flower of the cocoa-nut-tree.

The priests separately repeated sentences; and, at intervals, two, and sometimes all three, chanted a melancholy ditty, very little attended to by the natives. This kind of recitative continued near an hour. Then, after a short prayer, the chief



priest uncovered the *maro*, and Otoo rose up, and wrapped it about him, holding in his hand a bonnet, composed of the red feathers of the tropic bird, mixed with other blackish feathers. He stood opposite the three priests, who continued their prayers for about ten minutes; when a man rising suddenly from the crowd, said something ending with *beva!* and the crowd echoed back to him three times *Earee!* The company then repaired to the opposite side of a large pile of stones, where is the king's *morai*; which is not much unlike a large grave. Here the same ceremony was again performed, and ended with three cheers. The *maro* was now wrapped up, and ornamented by the addition of a small piece of red feathers.

The people now proceeded to a large hut, near the *morai*, where they seated themselves in solemn order. An oration was then made by a man of Tiaraboo, which ended in about ten minutes. He was followed by a man of Attahooroo; Potatou spoke next, and with much more fluency and grace than any of them. Tooteo, Otoo's orator exhibited after him, and then a man from Eimeo. Some other speeches were made, but not attended to. Omai said, that the substance of their speeches recommended friendship, and not fighting; but as many of the speakers expressed themselves with great warmth, there were, perhaps, some recriminations and protestations of their future good intentions. In the midst of  
their

their harangues, a man of Attahooroo rose up, having a sling fastened to his waist, and a large stone upon his shoulder. After parading for about fifteen minutes in the open space, and chanting a few short sentences, he threw the stone down. This stone, together with a plantain-tree that lay at Otoo's feet, were, at the conclusion of the speeches, carried to the *morai*; one of the priests, and Otoo with him, saying something upon the occasion.

Returning to Oparre, the sea-breeze having set in, we were obliged to land, and had a pleasant walk from Tettaha to Oparre. A tree, with two large bundles of dried leaves suspended upon it, pointed out the boundary of the two districts. We were accompanied by the man who had performed the ceremony of the stone and sling. With him Otoo's father held a long conversation, and appeared extremely angry. He was enraged, as I understood, at the part which Towha had taken in the Eimeo business."

From what can be judged of this solemnity, as related by Mr. King, it had not been only a thanksgiving, as Omai told us, but rather a confirmation of the treaty. The grave, mentioned by Mr. King, appears to be the very spot where the celebration of the rites began, when the human sacrifice was offered, at which Captain Cook was present, and before which the victim was laid. It is here also, that they first invest  
their

their kings with the *maro*. Omai, who had seen the ceremony when Otoo was made king, described the whole solemnity, when we were here; which is nearly the same as that now described by Mr. King; though, perhaps, upon a very different occasion. The plantain-tree is always the first thing introduced in all their religious ceremonies, as well as in all their public and private debates; and, probably, on many other occasions. While Towha was at Eimeo, he sent one or more messengers to Otoo every day. Every messenger, at all times, carried a young plantain-tree in his hand, which he laid at the feet of Otoo, before he mentioned his errand; then seated himself before him, and related the particulars of his message. When two men are in such high dispute that blows are expected to ensue, if one should lay a plantain-tree before the other, they both become cool, and proceed in the argument without further animosity. It is, indeed, the olive-branch of these people upon all occasions.

As our friends knew that we were upon the point of sailing, they all paid us a visit on the 26th, and brought more hogs with them than we wanted; for, having no salt left to preserve any, we had fully sufficient for our present use.

Captain Cook accompanied Otoo, the next day, to Oparre; and before he left it, took a survey of the cattle and poultry, which he had consigned to his friend's care. Every thing was in a promising

missing way; and seemed properly attended to. Two of the geese, as well as two of the ducks, were sitting; but the pea-hen and turkey-hen had neither of them begun to lay. He took four goats from Otoo, two of which he intended to leave at Ulietea; and to reserve the other two for the use of any other island he might touch at in his passage to the north.

The following circumstance concerning Otoo will shew, that the people of this island are capable of much address and art, to accomplish their purposes. Amongst other things which Captain Cook had, at different times, given to this chief, was a spying-glass. Having been two or three days possessed of it, he, perhaps, grew tired of its novelty, or discovered that it could not be of any use to him, he therefore carried it, privately, to Captain Clerke; telling him, that, as he had shewn great friendship for him, he had got a present for him, which, he supposed, would be agreeable. "But, (says Otoo) *Toote* must not be informed of this, because he wanted it, and I refused to let him have it;" accordingly, he put the glass into Captain Clerke's hands, assuring him, at the same time, that he came honestly by it. Captain Clerke, at first, wished to be excused from accepting it; but Otoo insisted upon it, that he should; and left it with him. A few days after, he reminded Captain Clerke of the glass; who, though he did not wish to have it, was yet desirous

desirous of obliging Otoo; and thinking, that a few axes would be more acceptable, produced four to give him in exchange. Otoo immediately exclaimed, "*Toote* offered me five for it." "Well (says Captain Clerke) if that be the case, you shall not be a loser by your friendship for me; and you shall have six axes." He readily accepted them; but again desired, that Captain Cook might not be made acquainted with the transaction. For the many valuable things which Omai had given away, he received one good thing in return. This was a very fine double sailing canoe, completely equipped. Some time before, the Captain had made up a suit of English colours for him; but he considered them as too valuable to be used at this time; and, therefore, patched up a parcel of flags and pendants, to the number of ten or a dozen, which he spread on different parts of his canoe. This, as might be expected, drew together a great number of people to look at her. Omai's streamers were a mixture of English, French, Spanish, and Dutch, being all the European colours he had seen. He had completely stocked himself with cloth and cocoa-nut oil, which are better, and more plentiful at Otaheite, than at any of the Society Islands; inso-much, that they are considered as articles of trade. Omai would not have behaved so inconsistently, as he did in many instances, had it not been for his sister and brother-in-law, who, together with  
a few

a few select acquaintances, engrossed him to themselves, in order to strip him of every article he possessed. And they would certainly have succeeded, if Captain Cook had not taken the most useful articles of his property into his possession. This, however, would not have saved Omai from ruin, if he had permitted these relations of his to have accompanied him to his intended place of settlement at Huaheine. This, indeed, was their intention; but the Captain disappointed their farther views of plunder, by forbidding them to appear in that island, while he continued in that part of the world; and they knew him too well not to comply.

Otoo came on board the 28th of September, and informed Captain Cook that he had got a canoe, which he desired he would take with him, as a present from him to the *Earee rabie no Pretane*. The Captain was highly pleased with Otoo for this mark of his gratitude. At first, the Captain supposed it to have been a model of one of their vessels of war; but it proved to be a small *ivabab*, about sixteen feet long. It was double, and probably had been built for the purpose; and was decorated with carved work, like their canoes in general. It being too large for him to take on board, he could only thank him for his good intention; but he would have been much better pleased, if his present could have been accepted.

By

By calms, and gentle breezes from the west, we were detained here some days longer than we expected. All this time, the ships were crowded with our friends, and surrounded by canoes; for none of them would quit the place, till we departed. At length, on the 29th, at three o'clock in the afternoon, the wind came at east, and we weighed anchor. The ships being under sail, to oblige Otoo, and to gratify the curiosity of his people, we fired seven guns; after which, all our friends, except him, and two or three more, took leave of us with such lively marks of sorrow and affection, as sufficiently testified how much they regretted our departure. Otoo expressing a desire of seeing the ships sail, we made a stretch out to sea, and then in again immediately; when he also took his last farewell, and went ashore in his canoe.

It was strictly enjoined to Captain Cook by Otoo, to request, in his name, the *Earee rabie no Pretane*, to send him, by the next ship, some red feathers, and the birds which produce them; also axes; half a dozen muskets; powder and shot; and by no means to forget horses.

When these people make us a present, it is customary for them to let us know what they expect in return; and we find it convenient to gratify them; by which means our presents come dearer to us than what we get by barter. But, being sometimes pressed by occasional scarcity, we could have recourse to our friends for a supply

as a present, when we could not get it by any other method. Upon the whole, therefore, this way of traffic was full as advantageous to us as to the natives. Captain Cook, in general, paid for each separate article as he received it, except in his intercourse with Otoo. His presents were so numerous, that no account was kept between him and the Captain. Whatever he asked for, if it could be spared, the Captain never denied him, and he always found him moderate in his demands.

Captain Cook would not have quitted Otaheite so soon as he did, if he could have prevailed upon Omai to fix himself there. There was not even a probability of our being better supplied with provisions elsewhere, than we continued to be here, even at the time of our leaving it. Besides, such a friendship and confidence subsisted between us and the inhabitants, as could hardly be expected at any other place; and it was rather extraordinary, had never been once interrupted or suspended by any accident, or misunderstanding; nor had there been a theft committed, worthy of notice. It is probable, however, that their regularity of conduct resulted from their fear of interrupting a traffic, which might procure them a greater share of our commodities than they could obtain by plunder or pilfering. This point, indeed, was, in some degree, settled at the first interview with their chiefs, after our arrival. For  
Cap-



Captain Cook declared then to the natives, in the most decisive terms, that he would not suffer them to rob us, as they had formerly done. Omai was singularly useful in this business, being instructed by the Captain to point out to them the happy consequences of their honest conduct, and the fatal mischiefs that must attend a deviation from it. But the chiefs have it not always in their power to prevent thefts; they are often robbed themselves; and complain of it as the worst of evils. The most valuable things that Otoo received from Captain Cook, were left in the Captain's possession till the day before we sailed; Otoo declaring at the same time, that they were now where so safe. From the acquisition of new riches, the inducements to pilfering must certainly have increased; and the chiefs are sensible of this, from their being so extremely desirous of having chests. The few that the Spaniards left amongst them are highly prized; and they were continually asking us for some. Captain Cook had one made for Otoo, the dimensions of which were eight feet in length, five in breadth, and about three in depth. Locks and bolts are not considered as a sufficient security; but it must be large enough for two people to sleep upon, and consequently guard it in the night.

It may appear extraordinary, that we could never get any distinct account of the time when the Spaniards arrived, the time they stayed, and when

when they departed. The more we made inquiry into this matter, the more we were convinced of the incapability of most of these people to remember, calculate, or note the time, when past events happened; especially if for a longer period than eighteen or twenty months. It however appeared, by the inscription upon the crosses, and by the information of the most intelligent of the natives, that two ships came to Oheitepeha in 1774, not long after Captain Cook left Matavai, which was in May the same year. The live stock they left here, consisted of one bull, some goats, hogs, and dogs, and the male of another animal; which we were afterwards informed was a ram, and was at this time at Bolabola.

The hogs are large; have already much improved the breed originally found by us upon the island; and, on our late arrival, were very numerous. Goats are also in plenty, there being hardly a chief without some. The dogs that the Spaniards put ashore are of two or three sorts: if they had all been hanged, instead of being left upon the island, it would have been better for the natives. Captain Cook's young ram fell a victim to one of these animals. Four Spaniards remained on shore when these ships left the island; two of whom were priests, one a servant, and the other was much caressed among the natives, who distinguished him by the name of Mateema. He seems to have so far studied their language, as to

have been able to speak it tolerably ; and to have been indefatigable in impressing the minds of the islanders with exalted ideas of the greatness of the Spanish nation, and inducing them to think meanly of that of the English. He even assured them, that we no longer existed as an independent nation ; that *Pretane* was but a small island, which they had entirely destroyed ; and as to Captain Cook, that they had met with him at sea, and with the greatest ease that could be imagined, had sent his ship, and every creature in her, to the bottom ; so that his visiting Otaheite was, at this time, very unexpected. Many other improbable falsehoods were propagated by this Spaniard, and believed by the inhabitants ; but Captain Cook's returning to Otaheite was considered as a complete confutation of all that Mateema had advanced. With what design the priests remained, cannot easily be conceived. If it was their intention to convert the natives to the Catholic faith, they certainly have not succeeded. It does not appear, indeed, that they ever attempted it ; for the natives say, they never conversed with them, either on this, or any other subject. The priests resided the whole time in the house at Oheitepeha ; but Mateema roved about continually, visiting many parts of the island. After he and his companions had staid ten months, two ships arrived at Oheitepeha, took them aboard, and sailed again in five days. Whatever design the Spaniards might have had

had upon this island, this hasty departure shews they have now laid it aside. They endeavoured to make the natives believe, that they still intended to return ; and that they would bring with them houses, all kinds of animals, and men and women who were to settle on the island. Otoo, when he mentioned this to Captain Cook, added, that if the Spaniards should return, they should not come to Matavai Fort, which, he said, was ours. The idea pleased him ; but he did not consider that the completion of it would deprive him of his kingdom, and his people of their liberties. Though this shews how easily a settlement might be made at Otaheite, it is hoped that such a circumstance will never happen. Our occasional visits may have been of service to its inhabitants, but (considering how most European establishments are conducted among Indian nations) a permanent establishment amongst them would, probably, give them just cause to lament that our ships had ever discovered it. Indeed, a measure of this kind can hardly ever be seriously thought of ; as it can neither answer the purposes of public ambition, nor of private avarice.

It has been already observed that Captain Cook received a visit from one of the two natives of this island, who had been taken to Lima by the Spaniards. It is somewhat remarkable that he never saw him afterwards, especially as the Captain received him with uncommon civility. The

Captain, however, supposed that Omai had kept him at a distance from him, from motives of jealousy, he being a traveller that, in some degree, might vie with himself. Our touching at Teneriffe was a lucky circumstance for Omai; who prided himself in having visited a place belonging to Spain, as well as this man. Captain Clerke, who had seen the other man, spoke of him as a low fellow, a little out of his senses; and his own countrymen entertained the same opinion of him. In short, these two adventurers seemed to be held in little or no esteem. They had not been so fortunate, indeed, as to return home with such valuable property as had been bestowed upon Omai; whose advantages from going to England were so great, that if he should sink into the same state of insignificance, he has only himself to blame for it.

## CHAP.

## C H A P. V.

*Anchor at Taloo in Eimeo—The Harbours of Taloo and Parowroah described—Visit from Maheine, the Chief of Eimeo, who approaches with Caution—Description of the Person of Maheine—Preparations made for sailing—Detained by having a Goat stolen—That recovered, and another stolen—Menaces used to occasion it to be returned—Expedition across the Island, with a Party, in search of the Goat—Houses and Canoes burnt, and other Hostilities threatened—The Goat returned—The Island described, &c.*

ON the 30th of September, at day-break, after leaving Otaheite, we stood for the north end of the island of Eimeo. Omai, in his canoe, arrived there before us, and endeavoured, by taking some necessary measures, to shew us the situation. We were not, however, without pilots, having several natives of Otaheite on board, and, among them, not a few women. Unwilling to rely entirely upon these guides, Captain Cook dispatched two boats to examine the harbour; when, on a signal being made for safe anchorage, we stood in with both the ships, and anchored in ten fathoms water.

Taloo is the name of this harbour: it is on the north side of the island, and in the district

of Oboonohoo, or Poonohoo, It runs above two miles between the hills, south, or south by east. It is not inferior to any harbour that we have met with in this ocean, both for security and goodness of bottom. It has also this singular advantage, that a ship can sail in and out with the reigning trade wind. Several rivers fall into it; one of which is so considerable, as to admit boats a quarter of a mile up, where the water is perfectly fresh. The banks, on the sides of this stream, are covered with what the natives call the *pooroo* tree, on which they set no value, as it only serves for firing. So that wood and water may be procured here with great facility.

The harbour of Parowroah, on the same side of the island, is about two miles to the eastward, and is much larger within than that of Taloo; but the opening in the reef lies to leeward of the harbour, and is considerably narrower. These striking defects must give the harbour of Taloo a decided preference. There are one or two more harbours on the south side of the island, but they are not so considerable as those we have already mentioned.

As soon as we had anchored, great numbers of the inhabitants came aboard our ships, from mere motives of curiosity, for they brought nothing with them for the purposes of barter: but several canoes arrived, the next morning, from more distant parts, bringing with them an abundant supply

supply of bread-fruit, cocoa-nuts, and a few hogs, which were exchanged for beads, nails, and hatchets; red feathers not being so much demanded here as at Otaheite.

On Thursday the 2d of October, in the morning, Captain Cook received a visit from Maheine, the chief of the island. He approached the ship with as great caution and deliberation, as if he apprehended mischief from us, as friends of the Otaheiteans; these people have no idea that we can be in friendship with any one, without adopting his cause against his enemies. This chief was accompanied by his wife, who, we were told, is sister to Oamo, of Otaheite, whose death we heard of while we remained at this island. Captain Cook made them presents of such articles as seemed most to strike their fancy; and, after staying about half an hour, they went on shore. They returned, soon after, with a large hog, meaning it as a return for the Captain's favour; but he made them an additional present to the full value of it; after which they went on board the Discovery, to visit Captain Clerke.

Maheine, supported with a few adherents, has made himself, in some degree, independent of Otaheite. He is between forty and fifty years of age, and is bald-headed; which, at that age, is rather uncommon in these islands. He seemed ashamed of shewing his head, and wore a kind



of turban to conceal it. Whether they considered this deficiency of hair as disgraceful, or whether they supposed that we considered it in that light, it is not easy to determine. The latter, however, appears the most probable, from the circumstance of their having seen us shave the head of one of the natives, whom we detected stealing. They naturally concluded, therefore, that this was the kind of punishment inflicted by us upon all thieves; and some of our gentlemen, whose heads were but thinly covered with hair, were violently suspected, by them, of being *tetos*.

Towards the evening, Captain Cook and Omai mounted on horseback, and rode along the shore. Omai having forbid the natives to follow us, our train was not very numerous; the fear of giving offence having got the better of their curiosity. The fleet of Towha had been stationed in this harbour, and though the war was but of short duration, the marks of its devastation were every where conspicuous. The trees had lost all their fruit, and the houses in the neighbourhood had been burnt, or otherwise destroyed.

Having made every preparation for sailing, we hauled the ship off into the stream, in the morning of the 6th, intending to put to sea the next day, but a disagreeable accident prevented it.

We had in the day time sent our goats ashore to graze; and, notwithstanding two men had been appointed to look after them, one of them had been

been stolen this evening. This was a considerable loss, as it interfered with the Captain's views of stocking other islands with these animals: he therefore was determined, if possible, to recover it. We received intelligence the next morning, that it had been conveyed to Maheine, who was at that time at Parowroah harbour. Two elderly men offered their services to conduct any of our people to him, in order to bring back the goat. Accordingly the Captain dispatched some of his people in a boat, charged with a message to that chief, and insisted on both the goat and the thief being immediately given up.

Maheine had, only the day before, requested the Commodore to give him two goats; but, as he could not spare them, without depriving other islands, which had none of these animals, and was informed that there were two already upon this, he refused to gratify him. Willing, however, to assist his views in this respect, he desired an Otaheite chief then present, to beg Otoo, in his name, to convey two of these animals to Maheine; and to induce him to comply with this request, sent to Otoo, by the same chief, a quantity of red feathers, equal in value to the two goats that were required. The Commodore expected that Maheine, and all the other chiefs of the island, would have been perfectly satisfied with this arrangement; but he was mistaken, as the event clearly proves.

Little

Little suspecting that any one would presume to steal a second, while the necessary measures were taking to recover the first, the goats were again put ashore this morning; and a boat, as usual, was sent for them in the evening. While our people were getting them into the boat, one was conveyed away undiscovered. As it was immediately missed, we expected to recover it without much trouble, as it could not have been carried to any considerable distance. Several of the natives set out different ways, to seek after it; for they all endeavoured to persuade us, that it must have strayed into the woods; not one of them admitting that it was stolen. We were, however, convinced to the contrary, when we perceived that not any of the pursuers returned: their intention was only to amuse us, till their prize was safely deposited; and night coming on, prevented all future search. At this instant, the boat returned with the other goat, and one of the persons who had stolen it.

Most of the inhabitants, the next morning, were moved off, taking with them a corpse, which lay opposite the ship, on a *toopapaoo*; and Maheine, we were informed, had retired to the remotest part of the island. It now plainly appeared, that a regular plan had been projected to steal what the Commodore had refused to give; and that having restored one, they were determined not to part with the other, which was a female,

female, and with kid: and the Commodore was equally determined to have it back again; he therefore applied to the two elderly men, who had been instrumental in recovering the first, who informed him that this had been taken to a place on the south side of the island, called Watea, by Hamoa, who was the chief of that place; but that it would be delivered up if he would send for it. They expressed a willingness to conduct some of his people to the spot; but, finding that a boat might go and return in one day, he sent one with two of his officers, Mr. Roberts, and Mr. Shuttleworth; one to remain with the boat, if she could not get to the place, while the other went with the guides, accompanied by some of our people. The boat returned late in the evening, when we were informed by the officers, that after proceeding in the boat as far as rocks and shoals would permit, Mr. Shuttleworth landed; and, attended with two marines, and one of the guides, proceeded to the house of Hamoa, at Watea; where they were for some time amused by the people, who pretended they had sent for the goat, and that it would soon be produced. It, however, never arrived; and night approaching, Mr. Shuttleworth was obliged to return to his boat without it.

The Commodore lamented that he had proceeded so far in this business, as he could not retreat with credit, and without giving encouragement

ment to other islanders to rob us with impunity. Consulting with Omai, and the two old men, what methods to take, they advised him without hesitation, to go into the country with a party of men, and shoot every person he should meet with. The Commodore did not approve of this bloody counsel; but, early the next morning, set out with thirty-five of his people, accompanied by Omai, one of the old men, and three or four attendants. He also ordered Lieutenant Williamson round the western part of the island, with three armed boats, to meet us.

This party had no sooner landed, than the few remaining natives fled before us. The first person we met with upon our march, was in a kind of perilous situation; for Omai, the instant he beheld him, asked Captain Cook if he should shoot him; so fully was he persuaded that the advice he had given was immediately to be carried into execution. The Commodore then gave orders, both to him and our guide, to let it be made known that it was not our intention to injure, much less to destroy, a single native. These joyful tidings soon circulated, and prevented the flight of the inhabitants.

Ascending the ridge of hills, on our road to Watea, we were informed that the goat had been carried the same way, and could hardly have passed the hills: we therefore marched up in great silence, expecting to surprize the party who were

were bearing off the prize; but, when we arrived at the uppermost plantation, we were told, that the animal we were in search of had, indeed, been kept there the first night, but had been carried to Watea the next morning. We made no further inquiry, till we came within sight of Watea, where we were directed to Hamoa's house, by some people who also informed us, that the goat was there. We therefore fully expected to obtain it on our arrival; but, when we reached the house, the people we saw there denied that they had ever seen it, or knew any thing concerning it. Hamoa himself appeared, and expressed himself to the same effect.

On our first coming to Watea, several men were seen running to and fro in the woods, with clubs and darts in their hands; and Omai, who ran towards them, had stones thrown at him. Hence it appeared, that they intended to oppose any attempt that we might be induced to make, but on seeing the strength of our party, had given up the design. We were confirmed in this opinion, by observing, that all their houses were empty.

After collecting a few of the natives together, Omai was directed to expostulate with them on the absurdity of their conduct, and tell them that we had received sufficient evidence that the goat was in their possession; and that, if it was not immediately delivered up, we should burn  
all

all their houses and canoes; but, notwithstanding this expostulation, they persisted in their denial of having any knowledge of it. In consequence of which, the Commodore set fire to six or eight of their houses, and two or three war canoes, which were presently consumed. After this we marched off to join the boats, which were, at that time, about seven or eight miles from us; and, in our road, burnt six other war canoes, without any opposition. On the contrary, many of the natives assisted us; more, perhaps, from fear, than any other motive. At length Omai, who was at some distance before us, came back with information, that a multitude of men were assembling to attack us. We prepared ourselves to receive them, but, instead of enemies, they were petitioners, with plantain-trees in their hands, which they laid down before us, entreating the Commodore to spare a canoe that lay upon the spot, which he readily complied with.

About four o'clock in the afternoon, we arrived at Wharrarade, where our boats were waiting for us. The district of Wharrarade belongs to Tiarataboonoue; but this chief, together with the other principal people of the place, had fled to the hills; though we made no attack upon their property, they being in amity with Otoo. Here we remained about an hour, in order to rest ourselves, and afterwards set out for the ships, where we arrived at eight o'clock in the evening; but

no tidings of the goat had, at that time, been received; and, of course, the operations of the day had been ineffectual.

Early on Friday morning, the 10th of October, the Captain dispatched one of Omai's men to Maheine, charged with this peremptory message, that if he persisted in his refusal to deliver up the goat, a single canoe should not be left upon the island; and that hostilities should never cease, while the stolen animal continued in his possession. That the messenger might perceive that the Commodore was in earnest, he ordered the carpenters, in his presence, to break up three or four canoes that lay at the head of the harbour. The planks were, by his direction, taken on board, to serve as materials for building a house for Omai, at the place where he intended to reside. The Commodore, properly attended, went afterwards to the next harbour, where he destroyed seven or eight more canoes, and returned on board about seven in the evening. On his arrival, he was informed, that the goat had been returned about half an hour before; and it appeared, from good intelligence, that it came from the very place, where the inhabitants, the day before, declared they knew nothing about it. But, from the message delivered to the chief in the morning, he perceived that the Commodore was not to be trifled with.

Thus



Thus ended this troublesome and unfortunate business; equally to be regretted by the natives, and by Captain Cook. He was grieved to reflect, that, after refusing to assist his friends at Otaheite in the invasion of this island, he should so soon be obliged to engage in hostilities against its inhabitants; which, perhaps, were more injurious to them, than Towha's expedition.

Our intercourse with the natives was renewed the next morning; several canoes bringing bread-fruit and cocoa-nuts to the ships to barter; whence it was natural to conclude, that they were conscious they had merited the treatment they had received; and that, the cause of Captain Cook's displeasure being now removed, they apprehended no further mischief. We weighed, with a breeze, down the harbour, about nine; but it was so faint and variable, that we did not get out to sea till noon, when we steered for Huaheine, Omai attending in his canoe.

At Eimeo, the ships were abundantly supplied with fire-wood. We did not supply ourselves with this article at Otaheite, as there is not a tree at Matavai but what is useful to the inhabitants. We also received here a large supply of refreshments in hogs, bread-fruit, and cocoa-nuts.

There is very little difference between the produce of this island, and that of Otaheite; but the difference in their women is remarkable.

Those

Those of Eimeo have a dark hue, are low in stature, and have forbidding features.

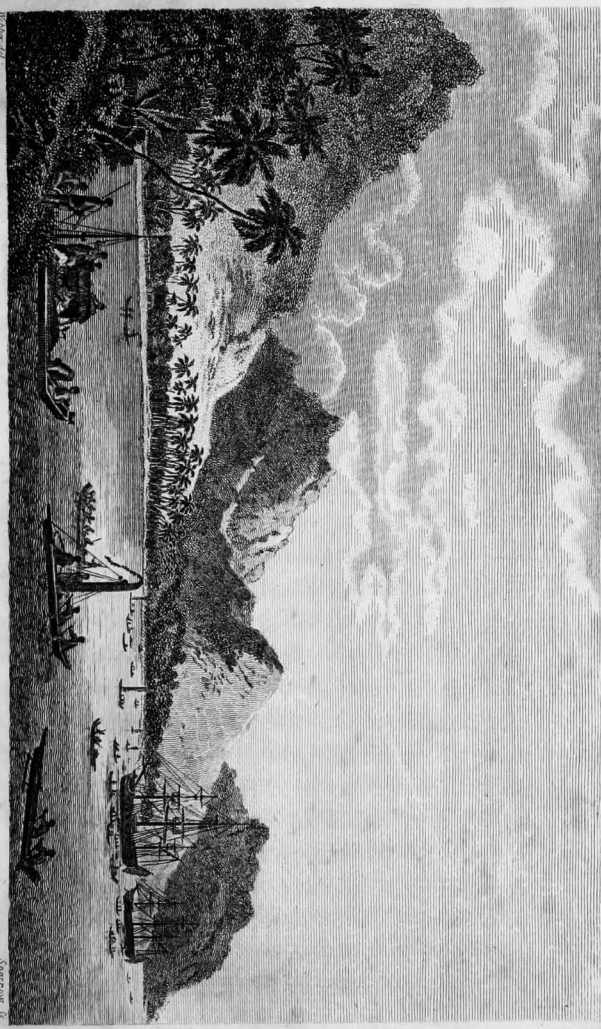
The appearance of Eimeo bears not the least resemblance to that of Otaheite. The latter being a hilly country, has little low land, except some deep vallies, and the flat border that almost surrounds it near the sea. Eimeo has steep rugged hills, running in different directions, leaving large vallies, and gently rising grounds about their sides. The hills, though rocky, are generally covered with trees, almost to the tops. At the bottom of the harbour of Taloo, the ground gradually rises to the foot of the hills; but the flat border, on the sides, becomes quite steep at a small distance from the sea. This renders it a prospect superior to any thing we saw at Otaheite. In the low grounds, the soil is a yellowish stiff mould; on the lower hills it is blacker and looser, and the stone which composes the hills, is of a bluish colour, interspersed with some particles of glimmer. Near the place where our ships were stationed, are two large stones, concerning which some superstitious notions are entertained by the natives. They consider them as brother and sister; that they are *Ealoas*, or divinities, and that they came from Ulietea, by some supernatural means.

## C H A P. VI.

*The Ships arrive at Huabeine—Assembly of the Chiefs—Omai's Harangue—His Establishment in this island unanimously agreed to—A House built for him—Steps taken to ensure his Safety—The Ships infested with Cock-roaches—Detection and Punishment of a Thief—He escapes from his Confinement—Animals left with Omai—His European Weapons—His Entertainments—Inscription on his House—His Behaviour at parting—Remarks on his general Conduct—His Character—Account of the two New-Zealanders who remained with him.*

ON the morning that succeeded our departure from Eimeo, we saw Huaheine extending from south-west by west, to west by north. At twelve o'clock we anchored at the northern entrance of Owharre harbour, situate on the west side of the island. Omai, in his canoe, entered the harbour just before us, but did not land. Though many of his countrymen crowded to see him, he did not take much notice of them. Great numbers also came off to the ships, inasmuch that we were greatly incommoded by them. Our passengers immediately informed them of our transactions at Eimeo, multiplying, by ten at least, the number of houses and canoes

*Look's Voyage, Orano Edition.*



*A View of MICHILIN.*

Spencer sc.



that we had destroyed. Captain Cook was not much displeased at their giving this exaggerated account, as he found that it made a considerable impression upon all who heard it; so that he had hopes it would induce the natives of this island to treat him in a better manner than they had done in his prior visits.

The next morning, which was the 13th of October, all the principal people of the island came to our ships. This was just what the Commodore wished, as it was now high time to settle Omai; and he supposed, that the presence of these chiefs would enable him to effect it in a satisfactory manner. Omai now seemed inclined to establish himself at Ulietea; and if he and Captain Cook could have agreed with respect to the mode of accomplishing that design, the latter would have consented to adopt it. His father had been deprived by the inhabitants of Bolabola, when they subdued Ulietea, of some land in that island; and the Captain hoped he should be able to get it restored to the son without difficulty. For this purpose, it was necessary that Omai should be upon amicable terms with those who had become masters of the island; but he would not listen to any such proposal, and was vain enough to imagine, that the Captain would make use of force to re-instate him in his forfeited lands. This preventing his being fixed at Ulietea, the Captain began to consider Huaheine as the more

proper place; and therefore determined to avail himself of the presence of the chief men of that island, and propose the affair to them.

The Captain now prepared to make a formal visit to Taireetareea, the *Earee rarie*, or king of the island, with a view of introducing this business. Omai, who was to accompany him, dressed himself very properly on the occasion, and provided a handsome present for the chief himself; and another for his *Eatooa*. Their landing drew most of the visitors from our ships, who, with many others, assembled in a large house. The concourse of people became very great, the major part of whom seemed stouter and fairer than those of Otaheite, and the number of men who appeared to be of consequence was also much greater, in proportion to the extent of the island. The Captain waited some time for Taireetareea; but when that chief appeared, he found that his presence might easily have been dispensed with, as he did not exceed ten years of age. Omai began with making his offering to the gods, which consisted of cloth, red feathers, &c. Another offering succeeded, which was to be given to the gods by the young chief; and after that, several other tufts of red feathers were presented. The different articles were laid before a priest, being each of them delivered with a kind of prayer, which was spoken by one of Omai's friends, though in a great measure dictated by himself.

In

In these prayers he did not forget his friends in England, nor those who had conducted him safe back to his native country. The *Earee rabie no Pretane* (king of Great-Britain), the Earl of Sandwich, *Toote*, *Tatee*, (Cook and Clerke) were mentioned in every one of them. These offerings and prayers being ended, the priest took each of the articles in order, and after repeating a prayer, sent every one to the *morai*.

These religious rites having been performed, Omai seated himself by the Captain, who bestowed a present on the young chief, and received another in return. Some arrangements were next agreed upon, relative to the mode of carrying on the intercourse between us and the islanders; and the Captain pointed out the mischievous consequences that would attend their plundering us, as they had done on former occasions. The establishment of Omai was then proposed to the chiefs who were assembled. He informed them, that we had conveyed him into our country, where he was well received by the great King and his *Earees*, (chiefs or nobles) and treated during his whole stay with all the marks of regard and affection; that he had been brought back again, after having been enriched, by our generosity, with a variety of articles, which would be highly beneficial to his countrymen; and that, besides the two horses which were to continue with him, many other new and useful animals had been left at



Otaheite, which would speedily multiply, and furnish a sufficient number for the use of all the neighbouring islands. He then gave them to understand, that it was Captain Cook's earnest request, that they would give his friend a piece of land, upon which he might build a house, and raise provisions for himself and servants; adding, that if he could not obtain this at Huaheine, either by donation or purchase, the Captain was resolved to carry him to Ulietea, and establish him there. These topics were dictated to Omai by Captain Cook, who observed, that what he concluded with, about going to Ulietea, seemed to gain the approbation of all the chiefs; and he immediately perceived the reason. Omai had vainly flattered himself, that the Captain would use force in restoring him to his father's lands in Ulietea, and he had talked at random, on this subject, to some of the assembly; who now expected that the Captain would assist them in invading Ulietea, and driving the Bolabolans out of that island. It being proper, therefore, that he should undeceive them, he signified in the most decisive manner, that he would neither give them any assistance in such an enterprize, nor would even suffer it to be put in execution while he remained in their seas; and that, if Omai established himself in Ulietea, he ought to be introduced as a friend, and not forced upon the people of Bolabola as their conqueror.

This

This peremptory declaration immediately gave a new turn to the sentiments of the council ; one of whom expressed himself to this effect : that the whole island of Huaheine, and whatever it contained, were Captain Cook's ; and that consequently he might dispose of what portion he pleased to his friend. Omai was pleased at hearing this ; thinking that he would be very liberal, and give him what was perfectly sufficient. But, to make an offer of what it would have been improper to accept, the Captain considered as offering nothing ; and therefore desired that they would mark out the particular spot, and likewise the exact quantity of land, which they intended to allot for the settlement. Upon this some chiefs, who had already retired from the assembly were sent for ; and, after a short consultation, the Commodore's request was unanimously granted, and the ground immediately fixed upon, adjoining to the house where the present meeting was held. It extended along the shore of the harbour, about two hundred yards ; its depth to the bottom of the hill was somewhat more ; and a proportional part of the hill was comprehended in the grant. This affair being settled, a tent was pitched on shore, a post established, and the observatories erected. The carpenters of each ship were also now employed in building a small house for Omai, in which he might secure the various European commodities that he had in his

possession; at the same time, some of our people were occupied in making a garden for his use, planting vines, shaddocks, melons, pine apples, and the seeds of other vegetable articles; all which were in a flourishing state before our departure from the island.

Omai began now to pay a serious attention to his own affairs, and heartily repented of his ill-judged prodigality at Otaheite. He found at Huaheine, a brother, a sister, and a brother-in-law, the sister having been married. But these did not plunder him, as his other relations had lately done. It appeared, however, that though they had too much honesty and good-nature to do him any injury, they were of too little consequence in the island to do him any real services, having neither authority nor influence to protect his property or his person. Thus circumstanced, he ran great risque of being stripped of every thing he had received from us, as soon as he should cease to be within the reach of our powerful protection.

He was now on the point of being placed in the very singular situation, of being the only rich man in the community of which he was to be a member. And as he had, by his connection with us, made himself master of an accumulated quantity of a species of treasure which his countrymen could not create by any art or industry of their own, it was natural to imagine, that while all  
were

were desirous of sharing in this envied wealth, all would be ready to join in attempts to strip its sole proprietor. As the most likely means of preventing this, Captain Cook advised him to distribute some of his moveables among two or three of the principal chiefs; who, on being thus gratified themselves, might be induced to favour him with their patronage, and shield him from the injuries of others. He promised to follow this advice; and we heard, before we sailed, that this prudent step had been taken. The Captain, however, not confiding entirely in the operations of gratitude, had recourse to the more forcible and effectual motive of intimidation, taking every opportunity of notifying to the inhabitants, that it was his intention to make another visit to their island, after being absent the usual time; and that if he did not find his friend in the same state of security in which he should leave him at present, all those who should then appear to have been his enemies, might expect to become the objects of his resentment. This menacing declaration will probably have some effect; for our successive visits of late years have induced these islanders to believe, that our ships are to return at certain periods; and while they continue to entertain such a notion, which the Captain thought it a fair stratagem to confirm, Omai has some prospect of being suffered to thrive upon his new plantation.

While

While we remained in this harbour, we carried the bread on shore to clear it of vermin. The number of cock-roaches that infested the ship at this time, is almost incredible. The damage we sustained from them was very considerable; and every attempt to destroy them proved fruitless. If any kind of food was exposed for a few minutes, it was covered with these noxious insects, who soon pierced it full of holes, so that it resembled an honey-comb. They proved particularly destructive to birds, which had been stuffed for curiosities, and were so fond of ink, that they ate out the writing on the labels fastened to different articles; and the only thing that preserved books from their ravages, was the closeness of the binding, which prevented these devourers from insinuating themselves between the leaves. According to Mr. Anderson, they were of two sorts, the *blatta orientalis*, and *germanica*.

The intercourse of trade and friendly offices, between us and the inhabitants of Huaheine, was undisturbed by any accident till the evening of the 22d, when one of the natives found means to get into Mr. Bayly's observatory, and carry off a sextant unobserved. Captain Cook was no sooner informed of this theft, than he went ashore, and desired Omai to apply to the chiefs, to procure restitution. He accordingly made application to them, but they took no steps towards recovering the instrument, being more attentive to

a beerua

a *beebe* that was then exhibiting, till the Captain ordered the performers to desist. Being now convinced that he was in earnest, they began to make some inquiry after the delinquent, who was sitting in the midst of them, with such marks of unconcern, that the Captain was in great doubt of his being guilty, particularly as he denied it. Omai, however, assuring him that this was the person, he was sent on board the ship, and there confined. This raised an universal ferment among the assembled islanders, and the whole body fled with precipitation. The prisoner being examined by Omai, was with some difficulty brought to confess where he had concealed the sextant, and it was brought back unhurt the next morning. After this, the natives recovered from their consternation, and began to gather about us as usual. As the thief appeared to be a shameless villain, Captain Cook punished him with greater severity than he had ever done any former culprit. Besides having his head and beard shaved, he commanded that both his ears should be cut off, and then dismissed him.

This punishment, however, did not deter him from committing other offences; for, early in the morning of the 25th, a general alarm was spread, occasioned, as was reported, by one of our goats being stolen by this very man; and though, upon examination, we found every thing safe in that quarter, yet it appeared, that he had destroyed  
and

and carried off from Omai's grounds, several vines and cabbage-plants; and he publicly threatened to put him to death, and set fire to his house, as soon as we should quit this place. To prevent his doing any further mischief, the Captain ordered him to be seized, and confined again on board the ship, with a view of carrying him off the island; and this intention seemed to give general satisfaction to all the chiefs. He was a native of Bolabola; but there were too many of the people here ready to co-operate with him in all his designs. We had, indeed, always met with more troublesome persons in Huaheine than in any other of the adjacent islands; and it was only fear, and the want of proper opportunities, that induced them to behave better now. Anarchy and confusion seemed to prevail among them. Their *Earee rabie*, as we have already observed, was but a child; and we did not find, that there was any individual, or any set of men, who held the reins of government for him; so that when ever any misunderstanding occurred between us, we never knew, with sufficient precision, to whom it was necessary to apply, in order to effect an accommodation, or procure redress,

Omai's house being now almost finished, many of his moveables were carried ashore on the 26th; amongst other articles was a box of toys, which greatly pleased the gazing multitude. But, as to his plates, dishes, drinking-mugs, glasses, pots,

pots, kettles, and the whole train of domestic apparatus, scarce one of his countrymen would even look at them. Omai himself began to think that they would be of no service to him; that a baked hog was more savory eating than a boiled one; that a plantain-leaf made as good a plate or dish as pewter; and that a cocoa-nut shell was as convenient a goblet as one of our mugs. He therefore disposed of most of these articles of English furniture among the crew of our ships; and received from them in return, hatchets, and other iron implements, which had a more intrinsic value in this part of the world. Among the numerous presents bestowed upon him in England, fire-works had not been omitted; some of which we exhibited in the evening of the 28th, before a great multitude of people, who beheld them with a mixture of pleasure and apprehension. Those which remained were put in order, and left with Omai, pursuant to their original destination.

On Thursday the 30th, early in the morning, the Bolabola-man whom we had in confinement, found means to escape out of the ship, carrying with him the shackle of the bilboe-bolt that had been put about his leg, which was taken from him, as soon as he arrived on shore, by one of the chiefs, and given to Omai; who quickly came on board, to inform the Captain that his mortal enemy was again let loose upon him. We  
found,



found, upon inquiry, that the sentry placed over the prisoner, and even the whole watch in that part of the ship where he was confined, having fallen asleep, he seized the favourable opportunity, took the key of the irons out of the drawer into which he had seen it put, and set himself at liberty. This escape convinced the Commodore that his people had been very remiss in their night-duty; which rendered it necessary to chastize those who were now in fault, and to establish some new regulations that might prevent similar negligence in future. He was pleased at hearing, afterwards, that the fellow who had escaped had gone over to Ulitea.

Omai was no sooner settled in his new habitation, than Captain Cook began to think of departing from Huaheine, and got every thing off from the shore this evening, except a goat big with kid, and a horse and mare; which were left in the possession of our friend, who was now to be finally separated from us. We also gave him a boar and two sows of the English breed; and he had got two or three sows of his own. The horse had covered the mare during our continuance at Otaheite; so that the introduction of a breed of horses into these islands has probably succeeded by this valuable present.

With regard to Omai's domestic establishment, he had procured at Otaheite four or five *toutous*, or people of the lower class; the two young New-Zealanders

Zealanders remained with him; and his brother, and several others, joined him at Huaheine; so that his family now consisted of ten or eleven persons; if that can justly be denominated a family, to which not one female belonged. The house which our people erected for him was twenty-four feet by eighteen; and about ten feet in height. It was composed of boards, which were the spoils of our military operations at Eimeo; and, in the construction of it, as few nails as possible were used, lest there might be an inducement, from the desire of iron, to pull it down. It was agreed upon, that immediately after our departure, he should erect a spacious house after the mode of his own country; one end of which was to be brought over that which we had built, so as entirely to enclose it for greater security. In this work, some of the chiefs of the island promised to contribute their assistance; and if the intended building should cover the ground which was marked out for it, few of the houses in Huaheine will exceed it in magnitude.

Omai's European weapons consisted of a fowling-piece, two pair of pistols, several swords or cutlasses, a musket, bayonet, and a cartouch-box. After he had got on shore whatever appertained to him, he had the two Captains, and most of the officers of both our ships, two or three times, to dinner; on which occasions, his  
table

table was plentifully supplied with the best provisions that the island could afford. Before we set sail, the Commodore caused the following inscription to be cut upon the outside of his house:

*Georgius Tertius, Rex, 2 Novembris, 1777:*

*Naves* { *Resolution, Jac. Cook, Pr.*  
           { *Discovery, Car. Clerke, Pr.*

On Sunday, the 2d of November, at four o'clock, we took the advantage of an easterly breeze, and sailed out of Owharre harbour. Most of our friends continued on board till our vessels were under sail; when Captain Cook, to gratify their curiosity, ordered five guns to be fired. Then they all left us, except Omai, who remained till we were out at sea. We had come to sail by a hawser fastened to the shore, which, in casting the ship, parted, being cut by the rocks; and its outer end was left behind: it therefore became necessary to dispatch a boat to bring it on board. In this boat our friend Omai went ashore, after having taken a very affectionate farewell of all the officers. He sustained this parting with a manly fortitude, till he came to Captain Cook, when, notwithstanding all his efforts, he was unable to suppress his tears; and he wept all the time in going ashore, as Mr. King, who accompanied him in the boat, afterwards informed the Captain.

Though

Though we had now, to our great satisfaction, brought him safe back to the very spot from which he was taken, it is probable, that we left him in a situation less desirable than that which he was in before his connection with us: not that, having tasted the comforts of civilized life, he must become more wretched from being obliged to relinquish all thoughts of continuing them, but merely because the advantages he received from us, have placed him in a more hazardous situation, with respect to his personal safety. From being greatly caressed in England, he had lost sight of his primary condition, and did not consider in what manner his acquisitions, either of knowledge or of wealth, would be estimated by his countrymen at his return; which were the only things whereby he could recommend himself to them now, more than before, and on which he could lay the foundation either of his future happiness or greatness. He appeared to have in some measure forgotten their customs in this respect, and even to have mistaken their genius; otherwise he must have been convinced of the extreme difficulty there would be in getting himself admitted as a man of rank, where there is scarce a single instance of a person's being raised from an inferior station, even by the greatest merit. Rank seems to be the foundation of all power and distinction here, and is so pertinaciously adhered to, that unless a per-

son has some degree of it, he will be contemned and hated, if he pretends to exercise any authority. This was really the case, in a great measure, with Omai; though his countrymen were rather cautious of expressing their sentiments while we continued among them.

If he had made a proper use of the presents he brought with him from Great-Britain, this, with the knowledge he had gained by travelling, might have enabled him to form the most advantageous connections. But he exhibited too many proofs of a weak inattention to this obvious means of promoting his interest. He had formed schemes of a higher nature; it may indeed be said, meaner; for revenge, rather than a desire of greatness, appeared to influence him from the beginning. His father was certainly a man of considerable property in Ulie-tea, when that island was subdued by the inhabitants of Bolabola; and, with many others, fled for refuge to Huaheine, where he died, and left Omai, with several other children, who thus became entirely dependent. In this situation, Captain Furneaux took him up, and brought him to England. Whether he expected, from the treatment he there met with, that any assistance would be afforded him against the enemies of his father and his country, or whether he had the vanity to suppose, that his own superiority of knowledge, and personal courage, would be sufficient

ficient to dispossess the conquerors of Ulitea, is uncertain; but, from the very commencement of the voyage, this was his constant topic. He would not pay any attention to our remonstrances on such an inconsiderate determination, but was displeased whenever more reasonable counsels were proposed for his benefit. Nay, he was so ridiculously attached to his favourite scheme, that he affected to believe the Bolabolans would certainly quit the conquered island, as soon as they should have intelligence of his arrival in Otaheite. As we proceeded, however, on our voyage, he began to perceive his error; and, by the time of our arrival at the Friendly Islands, had such apprehensions of his reception in his own country, that he was inclined to have remained at Tongataboo, under the protection of his Friend Feenou. At these islands, he squandered away a considerable part of his European treasure; and he was equally imprudent at Otaheite, till Captain Cook put a stop to his profusion. He also formed such improper connections there, that Otoo, though at first disposed to countenance him, afterwards openly expressed his disapprobation of his conduct. He might, however, have recovered the favour of that chief, and have settled to great advantage in Otaheite, as he had formerly lived some years there, and was now honoured with the notice of Towha, whose valuable present of a large double canoe has been

already mentioned. But he continued undetermined to the last, and probably would not have adopted the plan of settlement in Huaheine, if Captain Cook had not so positively refused to employ force in restoring him to the possession of his father's property.

Omai's greatest danger, in his present situation, will arise from the very imprudent declarations of his antipathy to the Bolabolans. For these people, from motives of jealousy, will undoubtedly endeavour to render him obnoxious to the inhabitants of Huaheine; as they are now at peace with that island, and may easily accomplish their designs. This circumstance he might with great ease have avoided. For they were not only free from any aversion to him, but the chief, whom we mentioned before as a priest or god, even offered to reinstate him in his father's lands. But he peremptorily refused this; and, to the very last, continued fixed in his resolution to embrace the first opportunity of satisfying his revenge in battle. To this he is perhaps not a little stimulated by the coat of mail he brought from England; clothed in which, and furnished with fire-arms, he idly imagines that he shall be invincible.

The defects of Omai's character were considerably over-balanced by his great good-nature, and docile tractable disposition. Captain Cook, during the whole time he was with him, seldom  
had

had reason to be seriously displeased with his general conduct. His grateful heart ever retained the highest sense of the favours conferred on him in England; nor will he ever be unmindful of those who honoured him, while in that kingdom, with their friendship and protection. Though he had a tolerable share of understanding, he shewed little application and perseverance in exerting it, so that he had but a general and imperfect knowledge of things. He was not a man of any great degree of observation. There were many elegant amusements, as well as useful arts, among the Friendly Islanders, which he might have conveyed to his native country, where they, in all probability, would have been readily adopted. But we never found that he endeavoured to make himself master of any one of them. Such indifference is, indeed, the characteristic foible of his countrymen. Though they have been visited by Europeans, at times, for these ten years past, we could not discern the slightest vestige of any attempt to profit by this intercourse; nor have they hitherto imitated us in any respect. It must not therefore be expected, that Omai will be able to introduce among them many of our arts and customs, or much improve those to which they have been familiarized by long habit. We trust, however, that he will exert his endeavours to bring to perfection the various fruits and vegetables that were planted by



us; which will be no small acquisition. But the principal advantage these islands are likely to receive from the travels of Omai, will probably arise from the animals that have been left upon them; which, perhaps, they never would have obtained, if he had not come over to England. When these multiply, Otaheite, and the Society Isles, will equal any place in the known world, with respect to provisions.

Omai's return, and the substantial proofs he carried back with him of British liberality, encouraged many to offer themselves as volunteers to accompany us to *Pretane*. Captain Cook took every opportunity of expressing his fixed determination to reject all applications of that kind, Omai, who was ambitious of remaining the only great traveller among them, being afraid lest the Captain might be prevailed upon to place others in a situation of rivalling him, frequently reminded him of the declaration of the Earl of Sandwich, that no others of his countrymen were to come to England.

Had there been the smallest probability of any ship being again sent to New-Zealand, the Commodore would have brought the two youths of that country home with him, both of them being very desirous of continuing with us. Taweharooa, the eldest, was endowed with strong natural sense, was extremely well-disposed, and capable of receiving any instruction. He appeared

ed to be sensible of the inferiority of his own country to these islands, and resigned himself, though perhaps not without reluctance, to end his days at Huaheine in ease and plenty. But the other, named Kokoa, was so strongly attached to us, that it became necessary to make use of force in carrying him ashore. He was a smart witty boy; and, on that account, great notice had been taken of him on board.

---

## C H A P. VII.

*Arrival at Ulitea—One of the Marines deserts, but is brought back by Captain Cook—Intelligence from Omai—Instructions to Captain Clerke—Two others desert—The two Captains seek them in vain—The Chief's Son, Daughter, and her Husband, confined on board the Discovery—Unsuccessful Conspiracy of the Natives against the Captains—The two Deserters are recovered—The Chief's Family set at Liberty—The Ships sail—Remarks on the Uliteans—Present and former State of their Island.*

AS soon as the boat, in which Omai was conveyed ashore, had returned, with the remainder of the hawser, to the ship, we hoisted

her in, and stood over for Ulietea without delay. The next morning, which was the 3d of November, we made sail round the southern end of that island, for the harbour of Ohamaneno. We met with variable light airs and calms alternately, so that at twelve o'clock we were still at the distance of a league from the mouth of the harbour; and while we were thus detained, Oreo, the chief of the island, with his son and son-in-law, came off to pay us a visit. All the boats were now hoisted out, and sent a-head to tow, being assisted by a slight southerly breeze. This soon failing, and being succeeded by an easterly one, which blew right out of the harbour, we were obliged to anchor at its entrance about two o'clock, and to warp in, which employed us till night. We were no sooner within the harbour, than our ships were surrounded with canoes, filled with the natives, who brought a supply of fruit and hogs, which they exchanged for our commodities.

The following day, the Resolution was moored close to the northern shore, at the head of the harbour; and the Discovery along-side the southern shore. Captain Cook, in the mean time, returned Oreo's visit, and presented that chief with a red-feathered cap from Tongataboo, a shirt, a linen gown, and a few other things of less value. Oreo, and some of his friends, then accompanied him on board to dinner. On Thursday

day the 6th, the observatories were set up, and the necessary instruments carried on shore. The two succeeding days, Captain Cook, Mr. King, and Mr. Bayly, observed the sun's azimuths, both on shore and on board, with all the compasses, in order to discover the variation. Nothing remarkable happened, till very early in the morning of the 13th, when a marine, named John Harrison, who was sentinel at the observatory, deserted, taking with him his musket and accoutrements. As soon as we gained intelligence which way he had gone, a party was detached in search of him; but they returned towards the evening, without success. The next day, Captain Cook applied to the chief concerning this affair, who promised to send a party of the islanders after the fugitive, and gave us hopes that he should be brought back in the course of that day. This, however, did not happen; and we had reason to imagine, that the chief had taken no steps towards finding him.

We had, at this time, a considerable number of the natives about our ships, and several thefts were committed; the consequences of which being apprehended by them, very few of them came to visit us the next morning. Oreo himself caught the alarm, and fled with his whole family. Captain Cook considered this as a good opportunity to insist upon their delivering up the deserter; and having heard that he was then at  
a place

a place called Hamoa, situate on the other side of the island, he repaired thither with two armed boats, attended by a native. In their way, they met with the chief, who also embarked with them. The Captain, with a few of his men, landing about a mile and a half from the spot, marched up to it with great expedition, lest the sight of the boats should give the alarm, and allow the offender sufficient time to make his escape to the mountains. This precaution proved unnecessary; for the natives of that part of the island having obtained information of the Captain's approach, were prepared to deliver up the fugitive. He was found, with his musket lying before him, seated betwixt two women, who, the instant that the Captain entered the house, rose up to plead in his vindication. As such proceedings deserved to be discouraged, the Captain, with a stern look, bid them be gone; upon which they burst into tears, and retired. Paha, the chief of that district, now came with a sucking-pig, and a plantain-tree, which he was on the point of presenting to Captain Cook, as a peace-offering; who rejected it, and having ordered the chief to quit his presence, embarked with Harrison in one of the boats, and returned to the ships. After this, harmony was speedily restored. The delinquent made no other excuse for his conduct; than that the natives had enticed him away; which, perhaps was in a great measure true, as Paha, and the

the two women above-mentioned, had been at the ship the day before his desertion. As he had remained at his station till within a few minutes of the time in which he was to have been relieved by another, the punishment he received was not very severe.

About a fortnight after we had arrived in Ulie-tea, Omai dispatched two of his people in a canoe, with intelligence, that he continued undisturbed by the inhabitants of Huaheine, and that every thing succeeded with him, except that his goat had died in kidding. This information was accompanied with a request, that Captain Cook would send him another goat, and also two axes. Pleased with this additional opportunity of serving his friend, the Captain sent back the messengers to Huaheine, on the 18th, with the axes, and a male and female kid.

On Wednesday the 19th, the Commodore delivered to Captain Clerke his instructions how to proceed, in case of separation, after quitting these islands. The purport of these instructions was as follows: That, whereas the passage from the Society Isles to the northern coast of America was of considerable length, and as a part of it must be performed in the depth of winter, when boisterous weather must be expected, which might perhaps occasion a separation, Captain Clerke should take all possible care to prevent this; but that if the two ships should chance to be separated,

rated, he, after searching for Captain Cook, and not finding him in five days, was to proceed towards the coast of New-Albion, and endeavour to fall in with it in the latitude of  $45^{\circ}$ , where he was to cruize for him ten days; and not seeing him in that time, was to put into the first convenient harbour, in or to the north of that latitude, to obtain refreshments, and take in wood and water: that, during his continuance in port, he was constantly to look out for Captain Cook; and if the latter did not join him before the 1st of April following, he was to proceed northward to the latitude of  $56^{\circ}$ , where, at such a distance from the coast as did not exceed fifteen leagues, he was to cruize for him till the 10th of May; and not finding him, was to proceed on a northerly course, and attempt to discover a passage into the Atlantic Ocean, either through Hudson's or Baffin's Bays, as directed by the instructions of the Board of Admiralty: that, if he should fail in those endeavours, he was to repair to the harbour of St. Peter and St. Paul in Kamtschatka, and pass the winter there; but that if he could not procure refreshments at that port, he was at liberty to go where he should think proper, leaving with the Governor, before his departure, an account of his destination, to be delivered to Captain Cook on his arrival; and that, in the spring of the year following (1779) he was to return to the port above-mentioned; that

that if he then received no further orders from Captain Cook, so as to justify his pursuing any other measures than those which were pointed out in the instructions of the Lords of the Admiralty, his future proceedings were to be directed by them; and that, in case of being prevented, by illness or any other cause, from carrying these, and the instructions of their Lordships into execution, he was to leave them with the officer who was next in command.

While we lay moored to the shore, we scrubbed both sides of the bottoms of our vessels, and also fixed some plates of tin under the binds. These plates Captain Cook received from the ingenious Mr. Pelham, Secretary to the Commissioners for victualling the royal navy, for the purpose of trying whether tin would succeed as well as copper, in sheathing the bottoms of ships.

On Monday the 24th, in the morning, the Commodore was informed that two of the Discovery's people, one of whom was a Midshipman, were missing. Not long after, we learned from the natives, that they had embarked in a canoe the preceding night, and were now at the other end of the island. As the Midshipman had expressed a desire of continuing at one of these islands, it was extremely probable that he and his companion had gone off with that intent. Captain Clerke therefore, with two armed boats, and a detachment of marines, set out in quest of the



the fugitives, but returned in the evening without success. From the conduct of the islanders, he was of opinion, that they intended to conceal the deserters; and with this view, had deceived him with false information, directing him to seek for them where they could not be found. He was not mistaken; for, the next morning, intelligence was brought, that the two runaways were in the Isle of Otaha. These not being the only persons in the ships who were desirous of remaining at these favourite islands, it was necessary, in order to give an effectual discouragement to any further desertion, to recover them at all events. Captain Cook therefore determined to go in pursuit of them himself, having observed that the natives seldom attempted to amuse him with false information. He accordingly set out with two armed boats, accompanied by Oreo himself. They proceeded, without stopping at any place, till they came to the eastern side of Otaha, where they put ashore; and the chief dispatched a man before them, with orders to seize the fugitives, and keep them till the Captain and his attendants should arrive with the boats. But when they had got to the place where they expected to find them, they were informed that they had quitted this island and gone to Bolabola the preceding day. The Captain, not chusing to follow them thither, returned to the ships, with a full determination to have recourse

to

to a measure which, he had reason to believe, would compel the natives to restore them.

On the 26th, soon after break of day, Oreo, with his son, daughter, and son-in-law, having come on board the Resolution, Captain Cook resolved to detain the three last, till our deserters should be delivered up. With this view, Captain Clerke invited them on board his ship, and, as soon as they arrived in his cabin, a sentinel was placed at the door, and the window secured. This proceeding greatly surprized them; and Captain Clerke having explained the reason of it, they burst into tears, and begged he would not kill them. He assured them he would not; and that the moment his people were brought back, they should be released. This, however, did not remove their uneasiness, and they bewailed their fate in silent sorrow. The chief being with Captain Cook when he received intelligence of this affair, immediately mentioned it to him, imagining that this step had been taken without his knowledge and approbation. The Captain instantly undeceived him; and then he began to entertain apprehensions with respect to his own situation, and his countenance indicated the greatest perturbation of mind. But the Captain soon quieted his fears, by telling him, that he was at liberty to quit the ship whenever he chose, and to take such steps towards the recovery of our two men, as he should judge best calculated for  
that

that purpose; and that, if he should meet with success, his friends on board the *Discovery* should be released from their confinement: if not, that they should certainly be carried away with us. The Captain added, that the chief's conduct, as well as that of many of his countrymen, in not only assisting these two men to make their escape, but in endeavouring, at this very time, to prevail upon others to follow them, would justify any measure that could serve to put a stop to such proceedings. This explanation of the motives upon which the Commodore acted, seemed to remove, in a great degree, that general consternation into which Oreo and his people who were present, were at first thrown. But, though relieved from all apprehensions with regard to their own safety, they were still under the deepest concern for the prisoners in the *Discovery*. Numbers of them went under the stern of that ship in canoes, and lamented their captivity with long and loud exclamations. The name of Poedooa (for that was the appellation of Oreo's daughter) resounded from every quarter; and the women not only made a most dismal howling, but struck their bosoms, and cut their heads with sharks' teeth, which occasioned a considerable effusion of blood.

The chief now dispatched a canoe to Bolabola, with a message to Opoony, king of that island, informing him of what had happened,  
and

and requesting him to seize the two deserters, and send them back. The messenger, who was the father of Oreo's son-in-law Pootoe, came to receive Capt. Cook's commands before his departure; who strictly enjoined him not to return without the fugitives, and to tell Opoony, from him, that if they had left the isle of Bolabola, he must send canoes in pursuit of them.

The impatient natives, not thinking proper to trust to the return of our people for the release of the prisoners, were induced to meditate an attempt which, if it had not been prevented, might have involved them in still greater distress. Between five and six o'clock, Captain Cook, who was then on shore, abreast of the ship, observed that all their canoes, in and about the harbour, began to move off. He inquired, in vain, for the cause of this; till our people, calling to us from the Discovery informed us that some of the islanders had seized Captain Clerke and Mr. Gore, as they were walking at a small distance from the ships. The Commodore, struck with the boldness of this scheme of retaliation, which seemed to counteract him in his own way, instantly commanded his people to arm; and, in a few minutes a strong party, under the conduct of Mr. King, was sent to the rescue of our two gentlemen. Two armed boats, and a party under Mr. Williamson, were dispatched at the same time, to intercept the flying canoes in their re-

treat to the shore. These detachments had scarcely gone out of sight, when intelligence arrived that we had been misinformed; upon which they were immediately called in.

It manifestly appeared, however, from several corroborating particulars, that the natives had actually formed the design of seizing Captain Clerke; and they even made no secret in speaking of it the following day. But the principal part of their plan of operations was to have laid hold of the person of Captain Cook. He was accustomed to bathe every evening in the fresh water; on which occasions he frequently went alone, and always unarmed. Expecting him to go this evening, as usual, they had resolved upon seizing him, and Captain Clerke likewise, if he had accompanied him. But Captain Cook, after confining the chief's family, had taken care to avoid putting himself in their power; and had cautioned Captain Clerke and the officers not to go to any considerable distance from the ships. Oreo, in the course of the afternoon, asked our Commodore, three or four times, if he would not go to the bathing-place; till at length finding that he could not be prevailed upon, he retired with his people, notwithstanding all our entreaties to the contrary. Having no suspicion, at this time, of their design, Captain Cook imagined that a sudden panic had seized them, which would probably be soon over. Being disappointed with

respect to him, they fixed upon those who were more in their power. It was a fortunate circumstance that they did not succeed in their design; and that no mischief was done on the occasion; no muskets being fired, except two or three, to stop the canoes; to which firing, perhaps, Captain Clerke and Mr. Gore owed their safety\*; for at that moment, a party of the islanders, armed with clubs, were marching towards them, but dispersed on hearing the report of the muskets.

This conspiracy was first discovered by a girl, who had been brought from Huaheine by one of our officers. Happening to overhear some of the Ulieteans say, that they would seize Messrs. Clerke and Gore, she immediately ran to acquaint the first of our people that she met with. Those who had been intrusted with the execution of the design, threatened to put her to death, as soon as we should quit Ulietea, for disappointing them. Being aware of this, we contrived that the girl's friends should come, a day or two afterwards, and take her out of the ship, to convey her to a place where she might remain concealed, till she should find an opportunity of returning to Huaheine.

\* It is not improbable that they were also indebted for their safety to Captain Clerke's walking with a pistol in his hand, which he once fired. We mention this circumstance on the authority of Captain King.

On Thursday the 27th, we took down our observatories, and carried on board whatever we had ashore; we then unmoored the ships, and moved a little way down the harbour, where we anchored again. Towards the afternoon the natives, shaking off their apprehensions, gathered round, and on board our ships, as usual; and the unpleasing transactions of the preceding day seemed to be almost forgotten by both parties. In the succeeding night the wind blew in hard squalls, which were accompanied with heavy showers of rain. In one of these squalls the cable by which the Resolution was riding at anchor, parted; but, as we had another anchor ready to let go, the ship was quickly brought up again.

No account of our two fugitives having been received from Bolabola, Oreo now set out for that island, desiring Captain Cook to follow him, the next day, with the ships. This was the Captain's intention; but the wind prevented our getting out to sea. The same wind, however, which detained us in the harbour, brought back Oreo, with the two deserters, from Bolabola. They had reached Otaha on the night of their desertion; but being unable, for the want of wind, to get to any of the islands lying to the eastward, as they at first intended, they had proceeded to Bolabola, and thence to a little island called Toobace, where they were apprehended by Peotoe's

Pootoe's father. As soon as they were brought on board, the three prisoners in the *Discovery* were restored to their liberty. Such was the termination of an affair, which had given the *Commodore* much trouble and vexation.

The wind continuing constantly between the north and west, kept us in the harbour till Sunday the 17th of December; when, at eight o'clock in the morning, we weighed and made sail, with a light breeze at the north-east point. During the preceding week, we had been visited by persons from all quarters of the island, who afforded us a plentiful supply of hogs and green plantains, so that the time we remained wind-bound in the harbour was not totally lost; for green plantains are an excellent succedaneum for bread, and will keep good for two or three weeks. Besides being furnished with these provisions, we also took in plenty of wood and water.

The Ulieteans appeared to be, in general, smaller and more black than the natives of the adjacent islands, and seemed also less orderly, which may, perhaps, be owing to their having become subject to the inhabitants of Bolabola. Oroo, their chief, is only a kind of deputy of the Bolabolan monarch; and the conquest seems to have diminished the number of subordinate chiefs resident among them: they are, therefore, less immediately under the eye of those whose interest it is to enforce a proper obedience. Though



Ulietea is now reduced to this state of humiliating dependence, it was formerly, as we were informed, the most eminent of this group of islands, and was probably the first seat of government; for we were told, that the present royal family of Otaheite derives its descent from that which ruled here before the late revolution. The dethroned king of Ulietea, whose name is Ooroo, resides at Huaheine, furnishing, in his own person, an instance not only of the instability of power, but also of the respect paid by these islanders to particular families of princely rank; for they allow Ooroo to retain all the ensigns which are appropriated by them to royalty, notwithstanding his having been deprived of his dominions. We observed a similar instance of this during our stay at Ulietea, where one of our occasional visitants was Captain Cook's old friend Oree, late chief of Huaheine. He still maintained his consequence, and was constantly attended by a numerous retinue.

## C H A P.

## C H A P. VIII.

*Proceed to Bolabola, accompanied by Oreo and others—Application to Opoony for Monsieur de Bougainville's Anchor—Reasons for purchasing it—Delicacy of Opoony, in not accepting the Present—Quit the Society Islands—Description of Bolabola, and its Harbour—Curious History of the Reduction of the two Islands, Otaba and Ulietea—Bravery of the Men of Bolabola—Account of the Animals left at Bolabola and Ulietea—Process of salting Pork—Curfory Observations respecting Otaheite, and the Society Islands.*

HAVING taken our leave of Ulietea, we steered for Bolabola. Our principal reason for visiting this island was to procure one of the anchors which had been lost at Otaheite by Monsieur de Bougainville. This, we were informed, had been afterwards found by the natives there, and sent by them to Opoony, the chief of Bolabola. It was not on account of our being in want of anchors that we were anxious to get possession of it; but, having parted with all our hatchets, and other iron tools and implements, in purchasing refreshments, we were now obliged to create a fresh assortment of trading articles, by fabricating them from the spare iron we could find on board, and even the greatest part of that had been already

F 4

expended.

expended. Captain Cook, therefore, supposed *Monf. de Bougainville's* anchor would, in a great measure, supply our want of this useful material, and he did not entertain a doubt that *Opoony* might be induced to part with it.

*Oreo*, accompanied by six or eight others from *Ulietea*, attended us to *Bolabola*; and, indeed, most of the natives, except the chief, would gladly have taken a passage with us to England. At sun-set, being off the south point of *Bolabola*, we shortened sail, and passed the night making short boards. On the 8th, at day break, we made sail for the harbour, on the west side of the island. The wind being scant, it was nine o'clock before we were near enough to send away a boat to sound the entrance.

The master, when he returned with the boat, reported that the entrance of the harbour was rocky at the bottom, but that there was good ground within; and the depth of water twenty-five and twenty-seven fathoms; and that there was room to turn the ships in. Upon this information, we attempted to work the ships in; but, the wind and tide being against us, we made two or three trips, and found it could not be accomplished till the tide should turn in our favour. Whereupon Captain Cook gave up the design of carrying the ships into the harbour, and embarking in one of the boats, attended by *Oreo* and his companions, was rowed in for the island.

As

As soon as they were got ashore, the Commodore was introduced to Opoony, surrounded by a vast concourse of people. The necessary formality of compliments being over, he requested the chief to give him the anchor; and, to induce him to comply with the request, produced the present he intended for him. It consisted of a linen night-gown, some gauze handkerchiefs, a shirt, a looking-glass, some beads and toys, and six axes. Opoony, however, refused to accept the present till the Commodore had received the anchor; and ordered three persons to go and deliver it to him; with directions to receive from him what he thought proper in return. With these messengers we set out in our boats for a neighbouring island, where the anchor had been deposited; but it was neither so large, nor so perfect, as we expected. By the mark that was upon it, we found that it had originally weighed seven hundred pounds; but it now wanted the two palms, the ring, and part of the shank. The reason of Opoony's refusing Captain Cook's present was now apparent; he, doubtless, supposed that the anchor, in its present state, was so much inferior to it in value, that, when he saw it, he would be displeased. The Commodore, notwithstanding, took the anchor as he found it, and sent the whole of the present which he at first intended. This negotiation being completed, the Commodore returned on board, hoisted in the boats, and made sail to the

the north. But, while we were hoisting in the boats, we were visited by some of the natives, who came off, in three or four canoes, to see the ships. They brought with them one pig, and a few cocoa-nuts.

Had we remained there till the next day, we should probably have been supplied with plenty of provisions; and the natives would, doubtless, be disappointed when they found we were gone: but, having already a good stock of hogs and fruit on board, and not many articles left to purchase more, we had no inducement to defer the prosecution of our voyage.

Oteavanoa, the harbour of Bolabola, situated on the west side of the island, is very capacious; and, though we did not enter it, Captain Cook had the satisfaction of being informed, by persons employed by him for that purpose, that it was a very proper place for the reception of ships.

Towards the middle of this island is a lofty double-peaked mountain, which appeared to be barren on the east side, but, on the west side, has some trees or bushes. The lower grounds, towards the sea, like the other islands of this ocean, are covered with cocoa-palms, and bread-fruit trees. There are many little islets that surround it, which add to the number of its inhabitants, and to the amount of its vegetable productions.

Consider-

Considering the small extent of Bolabola, being only eight leagues in circumference, it is remarkable that its people should have been able to conquer Ulietea and Otaha; the former of which islands is, alone, more than double its size. In each of Captain Cook's three voyages, the war which produced this great revolution, was frequently mentioned; and, as it may amuse the reader, we shall give the history of it as related by themselves.

Ulietea and Otaha had long been friends; or, as the natives emphatically express it, they were considered as two brothers, whose views and interests were the same. The island of Huaheine was also admitted as their friend, but not in so eminent a degree. Like a traitor, Otaha leagued with Bolabola, jointly to attack Ulietea; whose people required the assistance of their friends of Huaheine, against these united powers. The inhabitants of Bolabola were encouraged by a prophetess, who predicted their success; and, that they might rely upon her prediction, she desired a man might be sent to a particular part of the sea, where, from a great depth, would arise a stone. He was accordingly sent in a canoe to the place specified, and was going instantly to dive after the stone, when, behold, it spontaneously started up to the surface, and came immediately into his hand! All the people were astonished at the sight; the stone was deemed sacred, and deposited

posited in the house of the *Eatopa*; and is still preserved, as a proof that this prophetess had great influence with the divinity. Elevated with the hopes of victory, the canoes of Bolabola attacked those of Ulietea and Huaheine; the encounter was of long duration, and, notwithstanding the miracle, the Bolabola fleet would have been vanquished, had not that of Otaha arrived at the critical moment. The fortune of the day was now turned, and their enemies were totally defeated. Two days after, the men of Bolabola invaded Huaheine, of which they made themselves masters; it being weakly defended, as most of its warriors were then absent. Many of its fugitives, however, having got to Otaheite, there related their lamentable tale. This so affected their own countrymen, and those of Ulietea whom they found in that island, that they obtained their assistance. They were furnished with only ten fighting canoes, and, with that inconsiderable force, effected a landing at Huaheine when dark at night; and, taking the Bolabola men by surprise, killed many of them, and dispersed the rest. Thus they again possessed themselves of their own island, which now remains independent, and is governed by its own chiefs. When the united fleets of Ulietea and Huaheine were defeated, the men of Bolabola were applied to by the allies of Otaha to be allowed an equal share of the conquests. This being refused, the  
alliance

alliance broke; and, during the war, Otaha was conquered, as well as Ulietea, both of which remain subject to Bolabola; the chiefs by whom they are governed, being only deputies to Opoony, the king of that island.

Such was their history of the war. It has already been observed, that these people are extremely deficient in recollecting the exact dates of past events. And, respecting this war, though it happened but a few years ago, we could only guess at the time of its commencement and duration, the natives not being able to satisfy our inquiries with any precision. The final conquest of Ulietea, which terminated the war, had been achieved before Captain Cook was there in 1769; but it was very apparent that peace had not been long restored, as marks of recent hostilities having been committed were then to be seen. By attending to the age of Teereetareea, the present chief of Huaheine, some additional collateral proof may be gathered. He did not appear to be above ten or twelve years of age, and his father, we were informed, had been killed in one of the engagements.

The Bolabola men, since the conquest of Ulietea and Otaha, are considered as invincible; and their fame is so far extended, that even at Otaheite, if not dreaded, they are respected for their valour. It is asserted, that they never fly from an enemy, and that they always are victorious  
against



against an equal number of the other islanders. Their neighbours, too, ascribe much to the superiority of their god, who, they believed, detained us by contrary winds at Ulietea.

The estimation in which the Bolabola men are held at Otaheite, may be gathered from Monsieur de Bougainville's anchor having been sent to their sovereign. The intention of transporting the Spanish bull to their island, must be ascribed to the same cause. And they already possessed a third European curiosity, a male animal brought to Otaheite by the Spaniards. This animal had been so imperfectly described by the natives, that we had been much puzzled to conjecture what it could be. Some good, however, generally arises out of evil. When Captain Clerke's deserters were brought back from Bolabola, they told us the animal had been shewn to them, and that it was a ram. If our men had not deserted, it is probable we should never have known this.

In consequence of this intelligence, Captain Cook, when he landed to meet Opoony, carried an ewe on shore, of the Cape of Good Hope breed, by which he has probably laid the foundation for a breed of sheep at Bolabola. He also left with Oreo, at Ulietea, two goats, and an English boar and sow: so that the race of hogs will be considerably improved in a few years at Otaheite and all the neighbouring islands; and they will,  
perhaps,

perhaps, be stocked with many valuable European animals.

When this is really the case, these islands will be unrivalled in abundance and variety of refreshments for the supply of navigators. Even in their present state, they are hardly to be excelled. When the inhabitants are not disturbed by intestine broils, which has been the case for several years past, their productions are numerous and plentiful.

If we had possessed a greater assortment of goods, and a proper quantity of salt, we might have salted as much pork as would have been sufficient to last both ships almost a year. But we quite exhausted our trading commodities at the Friendly Islands, Otaheite, and its neighbourhood. Our axes in particular were nearly gone, with which alone hogs were in general to be purchased. The salt that remained on board, was not more than was requisite for curing fifteen puncheons of meat.

The following process of curing pork has been adopted by Captain Cook in his several voyages. The hogs were killed in the evening; when cleaned, they were cut up, and the bone taken out. The meat was salted while it was hot, and laid so as to permit the juices to drain from it, till the next morning: it was then salted again, put into a cask, and covered with pickle. It remained, in this situation four or five days; when  
it

it was taken out, and carefully examined; and if any of it appeared to be in the least tainted, which was sometimes the case, it was separated from the rest, which was repacked, headed up, and filled with good pickle. It was again examined in about eight or ten days time, but there appeared to be no necessity for it, as it was generally found to be all perfectly cured. Bay and white salt mixed together answers the best, though either of them will do alone. Great care was taken that none of the large blood-vessels remained in the meat; and not too much should be packed together at the first salting, lest those pieces which are in the middle should heat, and hinder the salt from penetrating them. In tropical climates, meat ought not to be salted in rainy sultry weather.

Europeans having, of late, so frequently visited these islanders, they may on that account have been induced to breed a larger stock of hogs; knowing that whenever we come, they may be certain of receiving what they esteem a valuable consideration for them. They daily expect the Spaniards at Otaheite, and, in two or three years time, they will doubtless expect the English there, as well as at the other islands. It is useless to assure them that you will not return, for they suppose you cannot avoid it; though none of them either know or inquire the reason of your coming. It would, perhaps, have been  
better

better for these people to have been ignorant of our superiority, than, after once knowing it, to be abandoned to their original incapacity. They cannot, indeed, be restored to their former happy mediocrity, if the intercourse between us should be discontinued.

It is, in a manner, incumbent on the Europeans to pay them occasional visits (once in three or four years) to supply them with those articles, which we, by introducing, have given them a predilection for. The want of such supplies may be severely felt, when it is too late to return to their old imperfect contrivances, which they now despise and discard. When the iron tools with which we have furnished them are worn out, their own will be almost forgotten. A stone hatchet is now as great a curiosity among them, as an iron one was seven or eight years ago; and a chissel made of bone, or stone, is no where to be seen. Spike nails have been substituted in the room of the latter articles; and they are weak enough to imagine, that their store of them is inexhaustible, for they were no longer sought after.

Knives happened, at this time, to be in high estimation at Ulietea; and axes and hatchets bore unrivalled sway at all the islands. Respecting articles merely ornamental, these islanders are as changeable as the most polished European nations; for, an article which may be prized by them to-day, may perhaps be rejected to-mor-

row, as a fashion or whim may alter. But our iron implements are so evidently useful, that they must continue to be high in their estimation. They would indeed be miserable, if they should cease to receive supplies of what appears necessary to their comfortable existence; as they are destitute of the materials, and ignorant of the art of fabricating them.

In our former relations, too much has already been published respecting some of the modes of life, which rendered Otaheite so pleasing an abode to many of our people; and, if we could add any finishing strokes to that picture, we should be unwilling to exhibit a view of such licentious manners as cannot fail to be disgusting.

Having now concluded our account respecting these islands, which stand so conspicuous in the list of our discoveries, we refer the reader to the following chapter, for which we are indebted to Mr. Anderson.

## CHAP.

## C H A P. IX.

*Strictures on former Accounts of Otaheite—The prevailing Winds—Beauty and Fertility of the Country—Land but little cultivated—Produce—Natural Curiosities—Description of the Natives—Delicacy of the Women—Their general Character—Disposed to amorous Gratifications—Their Language—Ignorance of Surgery and Physic—Animal Food chiefly eaten by the superior Class—Pernicious Effects of Ava—Account of their different Meals—Connections between the two Sexes—Circumcision—Religion—Notions concerning Immortality—Superstitions—Strange Traditions about the Creation—The King almost deified—Classes of the People—Punishments—Peculiarities of the adjacent Islands—Limits of their Navigation.*

AFTER some prefatory remarks on the accounts of the successive voyages of Captain Wallis, Monsieur de Bougainville, and Captain Cook, Mr. Anderson begins to relate such particulars concerning Otaheite, and its neighbouring islands, as he was able to procure from Omai, or by conversing with the other natives.

For the greatest part of the year, the wind blows from between east-south-east, and east-north-east. It sometimes blows with considerable

force, and is called by the natives *Maarae*. When the wind blows strong, the weather is usually cloudy, with some rain; but when it is more moderate, it is clear, settled, and serene: if the wind should veer to south-east, or south-south-east, it blows more gently, and is called *Maai*. In December and January, when the sun is nearly vertical, both the winds and weather are very variable; but it often blows from west-north-west, or north-west. This wind is called *Toerou*; and is usually attended by cloudy weather, and sometimes rain. It seldom continues more than five or six days without interruption; and is the only wind that will permit the inhabitants of the islands to leeward to visit this in their canoes. If the wind is still more northerly, it has the different appellation of *Era-potaia*. The wind from south-west, and west-south-west, is more frequent than the former, and is usually gentle, with occasional calms and breezes, yet it sometimes blows in very brisk squalls. The weather is then generally cloudy and rainy, with a close hot air; often accompanied with much thunder and lightning. It is called by the natives *Etoa*.

Though the natives have no very accurate knowledge of those changes, they pretend to have drawn some conclusions from their effects. When the sea has a hollow sound, and dashes mildly on the shore, they say it portends good weather; but, if it sounds harshly, and the waves rapidly

rapidly succeed each other, the reverse is to be expected.

The south-east part of Otaheite affords one of the most luxuriant prospects in the universe. The hills are high, steep, and craggy; but they are covered to the very summits with trees and shrubs; the rocks seeming to possess the property of producing their verdant clothing. The lower land and vallies teem with various productions, that grow with exuberant vigour, and convey to the mind of the beholders an idea, that no country upon earth can vie with this in the strength and beauty of vegetation; nature has been equally liberal in distributing rivulets, which glide through every valley, dividing, as they approach the sea, into several branches, fertilizing the lands through which they run.

The habitations of the natives are irregularly scattered upon the flat land; and many of them along the shore, afforded us a delightful scene from our ships; especially as the sea within the reef is perfectly still, and affords at all times a safe navigation for the inhabitants, who are often seen passing and repassing in their canoes. On beholding these delightful scenes, I have often regretted my inability to transmit such a description of them, as would convey an impression somewhat similar to what I felt, who have been fortunate enough to have been on the spot. The natural fertility of the country, combined with



the mildness and serenity of the climate, has rendered the natives so careless in their cultivation, that the smallest traces of it cannot, in many places, be discovered, though overflowing with the richest productions. The cloth plant, and the *ava*, or intoxicating pepper, are almost the only things to which they shew any attention.

The bread-fruit tree is never planted, but springs from the roots of the old ones, which spread themselves near the surface of the ground. Hence we may observe, that the inhabitants of Otaheite, instead of being under a necessity of planting their bread, will rather be obliged to prevent its progress; which is, perhaps, sometimes done to afford room for a different sort of trees, which may enable them to make some variety in their food.

The principal of these trees are the cocoa-nut and plantain; the first of which requires no attention, after it appears a foot or two above the ground; but the plantain requires some care in the cultivation; for, about three months after it shoots up, it begins to bear fruit; during which time it puts forth young shoots, which supply a succession of fruit; the old stocks being cut down as the fruit is taken off.

The products of the island are more remarkable for their great abundance than for their variety; and curiosities here are not very numerous. Among these may be reckoned a large lake

lake of fresh water, on the top of one of the highest mountains, at the distance of almost two days journey. It is remarkable for its depth, and abounds with eels of an enormous size. This being esteemed the greatest natural curiosity of the country, travellers, who come from other islands, are usually asked, among the first things at their return, whether they have seen it. There is also a small pond of water on this island, which has a yellow sediment at the bottom. It has the appearance of being very good, but has an offensive taste, and often proves fatal to those who drink a quantity of it; and those who bathe in it break out in blotches.

On our arrival here, we were struck with the remarkable contrast between the inhabitants of Tongataboo, and those of Otaheite; the former being of a robust make, and dark colour, and the latter having a distinguished delicacy and whiteness. That difference, however, did not immediately preponderate in favour of the Otaheiteans; and, when it did, it was perhaps occasioned more by our becoming accustomed to them; the marks which had recommended the others beginning now to be forgotten.

The women, however, of Otaheite possess all those delicate characteristics, which in many countries distinguish them from the other sex. The men wear their beards long here, and their hair considerably longer than at Tongataboo, which

gave them a very different appearance. The Otaheiteans are timid and fickle. They are not so muscular and robust as the Friendly Islanders, arising, perhaps, from their being accustomed to less action; the superior fertility of their country enabling them to lead a more indolent life. They have a plumpness and smoothness of the skin; which, though more consonant with our ideas of beauty, is far from being an advantage; and is attended with a kind of languor in all their motions. This is visible in their boxing and wrestling, which display only the feeble efforts of children, if compared to the vigour and activity with which such exercises are performed at the Friendly Islands.

As personal endowments are in high estimation among them, they have various methods of improving them, according to their ideas of beauty. Among the *Erreoes*, or unmarried men, especially those of some consequence, it is customary to undergo a kind of physical operation, to render them fair; which is done by continuing a month or two in the house, wearing a great quantity of cloaths the whole time, and eating nothing but bread-fruit, which they say is remarkably efficacious in whitening the skin. They also intimate, that their corpulence and colour, at other times, depend upon their food; being obliged, as the seasons vary, to use different food at different times.

Nine-

Nine-tenths, at least, of their common diet consist of vegetable food; and the *mabee*, or fermented bread-fruit, which is an article in almost every meal, prevents costiveness, and has a singular effect in producing a coolness about them, which was not perceivable in us who fed on animal food. To this temperate course of life, may perhaps be attributed their having so few diseases among them. Indeed, they mention only five or six chronic or national disorders; among which are the dropsy, and the *sefai*, mentioned as frequent at Tongataboo. This was, however, before the arrival of the Europeans; for we have added a disease to their catalogue, which abundantly supplies the place of all the others, and is become almost universal; and for which they seem to have no effectual remedy. The priests, indeed, administer a medley of simples, but they acknowledge it never cures them. They admit, however, that in some few cases, nature alone has exterminated the poison of this loathsome disease, and produced a perfect recovery. They say also, that those infected with it communicate it to others by handling them, or feeding on the same utensils.

They shew an openness, and generosity of disposition, upon all occasions. Omai, indeed, has frequently said, that they exercise cruelty in punishing their enemies, and torment them with great deliberation; sometimes tearing out small  
pieces

pieces of flesh from different parts of the body; at other times plucking out the eyes, then cutting off the nose; and lastly, compleating the business by opening the belly. But this is only on very extraordinary occasions. If chearfulness results from conscious innocence, one would imagine their whole lives had been unsullied with a crime. This, however, may be rather imputed to their feelings, which, though lively, are never permanent. Under any misfortune, after the critical moment is past, they never labour under the appearance of anxiety. Care never produces a wrinkle on their brow; even the approach of death does not deprive them of their vivacity. I have seen them, when on the brink of the grave by disease, and when preparing to attack the enemy; but, in neither of these cases, have I ever observed their countenances overclouded with melancholy or dread.

Disposed, as they naturally are, to direct their aims to what will afford them ease or pleasure, all their amusements tend to excite their amorous passions; and their songs, with which they are greatly delighted, are directed to the same purpose. A constant succession of sensual enjoyments must however cloy; and they occasionally varied them to more refined subjects; they chanted their triumphs in war, and their amusements in peace; their travels and adventures; and the peculiar advantages of their own island.

This

This shews that they are immoderately fond of music, and though they did not relish our complicated compositions, they were much delighted with the more melodious sounds, when produced singly, as they, in some degree, resembled the simplicity of their own. They equally experience the soothing effects produced by particular kinds of motion; which in many cases, will allay any perturbation of mind, as successfully as music. Of this, the following may serve as a remarkable instance. Walking one day about Matavai Point, I saw a man in a small canoe, paddling with such expedition, and looking so eagerly about him, as to command my whole attention. At first, I supposed he had been pilfering from one of the ships, and was pursued; but he presently repeated his amusement. He proceeded from the shore to the place where the swell begins; and, attentively watching its first motion, paddled swiftly before it, till he perceived it overtook him, and had acquired sufficient strength to force his canoe before it without passing underneath; he then ceased paddling, and was carried along as rapidly as the wave, till he was landed upon the beach; when he started from his canoe, emptied it, and went in pursuit of another swell. He seemed to experience the most supreme delight, while he was thus swiftly and smoothly driven by the sea. His mind was so wholly occupied in this business, that, though  
crowds

crowds of his countrymen were collected to observe our tents and ships, as being objects that were both rare and curious to them, he did not notice them in the least. Two or three of the natives drew near, while I was observing him, and seemed to partake of his felicity; calling out to inform him when there was an appearance of a favourable swell. This exercise, which I understand is very frequent among them, is called *ehorooe*.

Though the language of Otaheite seems radically the same as that of New Zealand and the Friendly Islands, it has not that guttural pronunciation, and is pruned of some of the consonants, with which those dialects abound; which has rendered it, like the manners of the inhabitants, soft and soothing. It abounds with beautiful and figurative expressions, and is so copious, that they have above twenty different names for the bread-fruit; as many for the *taro* root; and half that number for the cocoa-nut.

They have one expression, corresponding exactly with the phraseology of the Scriptures, viz. "Yearning of the bowels." They use it upon every occasion, when affected by the passions; constantly referring pain from grief, desire, and other affections, to the bowels, as the seat of it; where, they imagine, all operations of the mind are also performed.

In

In the arts, they are extremely deficient; yet they pretend to perform cures in surgery, which our knowledge in that branch has not enabled us to imitate. Simple fractures are bound up with splints, but, if a part of the bone be lost, they insert between the fractured ends a piece of wood, made hollow, to supply its place. The *rappaoo*, or surgeon, inspects the wound in about five or six days, when he finds the wood is partly covered by the growing flesh; and, in as many more days, visits the patient a second time, when it is generally completely covered; and, when he has acquired some strength, he bathes in the water, and is restored.

Wounds, it is well known, will heal over leaden bullets, and there are some instances of their healing over other extraneous bodies. But what makes me entertain some doubt of the truth of this relation, is, that in those cases which fell under my observation, they were far from being so dexterous. I was shewn the stump of an arm, which had been taken off, that had not the appearance of a skilful operation, after making a due allowance for their defective instruments. And I saw a man going about with a dislocated shoulder, some months after he had received the accident, from their being unacquainted with a method of reducing it; though it is one of the simplest operations of our surgery.

Frac-



Fractures of the spine they know are mortal; and they also know, from experience, in what particular parts of the body wounds prove fatal. Their physical knowledge seems yet more limited, because, perhaps, their diseases are fewer than their accidents. In some cases, however, the priests administer the juices of herbs; and women, afflicted with after-pains, or other complaints after child-bearing, use a remedy which seems unnecessary in a hot country. Having heated some stones, they lay a thick cloth over them, covered with a quantity of a small plant of the mustard kind; and over them is spread another cloth; on this they seat themselves, and sweat profusely to obtain a cure. This method has been practised by the men, though ineffectually, for the cure of the venereal *lues*. It is remarkable, that they have no emetic medicines here.

A famine frequently happens in this island, notwithstanding its extreme fertility, in which many people are said to perish. Whether this calamity be owing to the scanty produce of some seasons, to over-population, or to wars, I have not been sufficiently informed; but it has taught them to exercise the strictest oeconomy, even in the times of plenty.

In a scarcity of provision, when their yams and bread-fruit are consumed, they have recourse to various roots which grow uncultivated upon the mountains. The *palarra*, which is found in great plenty,

plenty, is first used: it somewhat resembles a large potatoe, or yam; and, when in its growing state, is good, but becomes hard and stringy when old. They next eat two other roots, one of which appears like *taro*; and then the *ehoe*. Of this there are two sorts; one of which possesses deleterious qualities, which requires it to be sliced, and macerated in water, a night before it is baked for eating. It resembles, in this respect, the *cassava* root of the West-Indies; but, in the manner they dress it, has a very insipid taste. This and the *patarra* are creeping plants, the latter having ternate leaves.

A very small portion of animal food is enjoyed by the lower class of the people; and if at any time they obtain any, it is either fish, sea-eggs, or other marine productions; for pork hardly ever falls to their share. Only the *Eree de boi*, is able to afford pork every day; and the inferior chiefs, according to their riches, perhaps once a week, a fortnight, or a month. Sometimes, indeed, they are not allowed that; for, when the island is impoverished by war, or any other means, a prohibition is granted against the killing of hogs, which sometimes continues in force for several months, and even for a year or two. In such an interval, the hogs have multiplied so fast, that there have been instances of their changing their domestic state, and becoming wild.

When

When this prohibition is taken off, the chiefs assemble at the king's habitation, each bringing with him a present of hogs. After this, the king orders some of them to be killed, of which they all partake, and each returns to his own home, with full permission to kill as many as he pleases for his own use. On our arrival here, such a prohibition was actually in force, at least in those districts under the immediate direction of Otoo. And, when we quitted Oheitepeha, fearing we should not have gone to Matavai, he sent a messenger to assure us, that, as soon as the ships arrived there it should be taken off. We found it so, but our consumption of them was so great, that there is very little doubt but it would be laid on again immediately after we had failed. A prohibition is sometimes extended to fowls.

The *ava* is chiefly used among the better sort of people, but this beverage is differently prepared, from that which we saw in the Friendly Islands. Here they pour a small quantity of water upon the root, and often bake, roast, or bruise the stalks, without chewing it before it is infused. They also bruise the leaves of the plant here, and pour water upon them, as upon the root. It is not drank in large companies, in that sociable way which is practised among the people at Tongataboo; but it has more pernicious effects here, owing, perhaps, to the manner

ner of its preparation ; as we saw frequent instances of its intoxicating powers.

Many of us, who had visited these islands before, were surprized to find several of the natives, who were remarkable for their size and corpulency when we saw them last, now almost reduced to skeletons ; and the cause of this alteration was universally attributed to the use of the *ava*. Their skins were dry, rough, and covered with scales ; which, they say, occasionally fall off, and their skin becomes, in some degree, renewed. As an excuse for so destructive a practice, they alledge, it is to prevent their growing too corpulent ; but it enervates them exceedingly, and probably shortens the duration of their lives.

Their meals at Otaheite are very frequent. The first is about two o'clock in the morning, after which they go to sleep ; the next is at eight ; they dine at eleven, and again, as Omai expressed it, at two, and at five ; and they go to supper at eight. They have adopted some very whimsical customs in this article in domestic life : the women are not only obliged to eat by themselves, but are even excluded from partaking of most of the better sorts of food. Turtle, or fish of the tunny kind, they dare not touch, though it is high in esteem ; some particular sorts of the best plantains are also forbidden them ; and even those of the first rank are seldom permitted to eat pork. The children of both sexes also eat

apart; and the women usually serve up their own provisions.

In this, and many other customs, relative to their eating, there is something exceedingly mysterious. On our inquiring into the reasons of it, we were told, it was necessary that it should be so; and that was the only answer we could receive when we interrogated them upon that subject.

They are not so obscure and mysterious in their other customs respecting the females, especially with regard to their connections with the men. When a young man and woman, from mutual choice, agree to cohabit, the man makes a present to the father of the girl of the common necessities of life, as hogs, cloth, or canoes; and if he supposes he has not received a valuable consideration for his daughter, he compels her to leave her former friend, and to cohabit with a person who may be more liberal. The man, indeed, is always at full liberty to make a new choice; or, should his consort become a mother, he may destroy the child; and afterwards either leave the woman, or continue his connection with her. But if he adopts the child, and permits it to live, the man and woman are then considered as in the married state; and after that they seldom separate. A man may however, without being censured, join a more youthful partner

partner to his first wife, and live with both of them.

The custom of changing their conjugal connections is very general, and is so common an occurrence, that they mention it with indifference. The *erreoes*, or those of the better sort, who possess the means of purchasing a succession of fresh connections, are generally roaming about; and, having no particular attachment, seldom adopt the plan of a settled cohabitation. And this licentious plan of life is so agreeable to their disposition, that the most beautiful of both sexes exhaust their youthful days in practices which would disgrace the most savage tribes. These enormities are peculiarly shocking in a country whose general character has, in other respects, evident traces of the prevalence of humane feelings. When an *erreoe* woman brings forth a child, it is suffocated by applying a cloth to its mouth and nose, which has been previously dipped in water.

As the women, in such a life, must contribute greatly to its happiness, it is surprising that they should not only suffer the most humiliating restraints, with regard to food, but should be often treated with a degree of brutality, which one would suppose a man must be incapable of towards an object for whom he had the least affection or esteem. It is, however, extremely common to see the men beat them most unmerci-

fully; and unless this behaviour proceeds from jealousy, which both sexes sometimes pretend to be infected with, it will be difficult to assign a reason for it. This may the more readily be admitted as a motive, as I have known many instances where interest has been rejected for personal beauty; though, even in these cases, they are not susceptible of those delicate sentiments that result from mutual affection. Platonic love is hardly known in Otaheite.

From a notion of cleanliness, the cutting of the foreskin is a practice adopted among them; and they bestow a reproachful epithet upon those who neglect that operation. When five or six lads in a neighbourhood are pretty well grown up, it is made known to a *taboua* by the father of one of them. The *taboua*, attended by a servant, conducts the lads to the top of the hills; and after seating one of them in a proper manner, places a piece of wood beneath the foreskin, at the same time amusing him by desiring him to look aside at something which he pretends to see; the young man's attention being thus engaged, he immediately cuts through the skin with a shark's tooth, and separates the divided parts; then, after putting on a bandage, he performs the same operation on the other lads who attend him.

Five days after they have been thus disciplined, they bathe, the bandages are removed, and  
the

the matter is cleansed away. When five days more are expired, they bathe again, and are recovered; but, as a thickness of the prepuce remains, occasioned by the cutting, they again ascend the mountains with the *taboua* and servant, where a fire is prepared, and some stones heated; between two of which the prepuce is placed by the *taboua*, and is gently squeezed, in order to remove the thickness. This done, they return home, adorned with odoriferous flowers; and the *taboua* is rewarded by the fathers of the lads, according to their several abilities, with a present of hogs and cloth; and if their poverty will not permit them to make a proper acknowledgment, their relations on this occasion are expected to be liberal.

Their religious system abounds in singularities, and few of the common people have a competent knowledge of it, that being principally confined to their priests, which indeed are numerous. They pay no particular respect to one god, as possessing pre-eminence; but believe in a plurality of divinities, who have each a plenitude of power.

As different parts of the island, and the other neighbouring islands, have different gods, the respective inhabitants imagine they have chosen the most eminent, or one who is at least sufficiently powerful to protect them, and to supply their necessities. If he should not give them



satisfaction, they think it no impiety to change. An instance of this kind has lately happened in Tiaraboo, where two divinities have been discarded, and Oraa, god of Bolabola, has been adopted in their room. They have probably been induced to make this new choice, because his people have been victorious in war; and having, since their new election, been successful against the inhabitants of *Otabeite-nooe*, it is solely imputed to *Oraa*, who literally fights their battles.

In serving their gods, their assiduity is remarkably conspicuous. The *whattas* or offering-places of the *morais* are, in general, loaded with fruits and animals; and almost every house has a portion of it set apart for a similar purpose. Many of them are so rigidly scrupulous in their religious matters, that they will not even begin a meal, till they have laid aside a morsel for the *eatooa*; and we have seen their superstitious zeal carried to a most pernicious height in their human sacrifices, which are, I fear, too frequent. They probably have recourse to them to avert misfortunes. Their prayers, which they always chant like the songs in their festive entertainments, are also very frequent.

As in other cases, so in religion, the women are obliged to shew their inferiority. When they pass the *morais* they must partly uncover themselves, or take an extensive circuit to avoid them.

Though

Though they do not entertain an opinion, that their god must be continually conferring benefits, without sometimes forsaking them; they are less concerned at this, than at the attempts of some inauspicious being to injure them. *Etee*, they say, as an evil spirit, who delights in mischief; to whom they make offerings, as well as to their divinity. But all the mischiefs they apprehend from invisible beings, are merely temporal.

As to the soul, they believe it to be both immortal and immaterial; that during the pangs of death, it keeps fluttering about the lips; and that it ascends, and is eaten by the deity: that it continues in this state for some time; after which it takes its passage to a certain place, destined to receive the souls of men, and has existence in eternal night; or rather in a kind of dawn, or twilight.

They expect no permanent punishment hereafter for crimes committed upon earth; the souls of good and bad men being indiscriminately eaten by the deity. But they consider this coalition as a kind of necessary purification, before they enter the regions of bliss; for their doctrine inculcates, that those who refrain from all sensual connection with women some months before they depart this life, pass into their eternal mansion, without such a previous union, as if by such an

abstinence they were sufficiently pure to be exempted from the general lot.

They have not indeed those sublime conceptions of happiness which our religion, and indeed our reason, teach us to expect hereafter. Immortality is the only great privilege they think they shall acquire by death; for they suppose that spirits are not entirely divested of those passions by which they were actuated when combined with material vehicles. Thus, at a meeting of souls which were formerly enemies, many conflicts may ensue, which must certainly be ineffectual as those who are in this invisible state must be invulnerable.

Their reasoning is similar with regard to the meeting of a man and his consort. If the husband departs this life first, the soul of his wife is no stranger to him on its arrival in the land of spirits. They renew their former intimacy in a capacious building, called *Tourcoa*, where departed souls assemble to recreate themselves with the gods. The husband then conducts her to his separate habitation, where they eternally reside, and have an offspring, which, however, is purely spiritual, as their embraces are supposed to be far different from those of corporeal beings.

Many of their notions respecting the Deity are extravagantly absurd. They suppose him to be under the influence of those spirits who derive their existence from him; and that they frequently

quently eat him, though he has power to recreate himself. They cannot converse about immaterial things, without referring to material objects to convey their meaning, and therefore perhaps they use this mode of expression.

They further add, that, in the *touyooa*, the deity inquires whether they mean to destroy him, or not; and their determination is unalterable. This is not only known to the spirits, but also to the inhabitants of the earth; for, when the moon is on its wane, they are supposed to be devouring their *catooa*; and, in the proportion that it increases, he is renewing himself. And the superior, as well as the inferior gods are liable to this accident.

Other places, they also believe, are prepared for the reception of departed souls. Thus they are of opinion, that those who are drowned in the sea continue there, and enjoy a delightful country, sumptuous habitations, and every thing that can contribute to their happiness. They even maintain that all other animals have souls; and even trees, fruit, and stones; which, at their decease, or upon their being consumed or broken, ascend to the deity, from whom they pass into their destined mansion.

They imagine, that every temporal blessing is derived from their punctual performance of religious offices. They believe that the powerful influence of the divine spirit is universally diffused,

fused, and therefore it cannot be matter of surprise that they adopt many superstitious opinions concerning its operations. Sudden deaths, and all other accidents, they suppose to be effected under the immediate impulse of some divinity. If a man receives a wound in his toe, by stumbling against a stone, it is imputed to an *Eatoca*.

In the night, on approaching a *toopapasa*, where dead bodies are exposed, they are startled and terrified; as many of our ignorant and superstitious people are at the sight of a church-yard, or with the apprehensions of ghosts. They have implicit confidence in dreams, supposing them to be communications from their deity, or from the spirits of their friends who have departed this life; and that those who are favoured with them can foretell future events: but this kind of knowledge is limited to particular persons. Omai pretended to have these communications. He assured us, that on the 26th of July, 1776, his father's soul had intimated to him in a dream, that he should land somewhere in three days; but he was unfortunate in his first prophetic attempt, for we did not get into Teneriffe till the first of August.

Their dreamers, however, are thought little inferior to their inspired priests and priestesses, whose predictions are universally credited; and all undertakings of consequence are determined  
by

by them. Opoony has a particular esteem for the priestesses who persuaded him to invade Ulitea, and always consults her previous to his going to war. Our old doctrine of planetary influence, they, in some degree, adopt; and are sometimes regulated in their public councils by the appearances of the moon. If, on its first appearance after the change, it lies horizontally, they are encouraged to engage in war, and seem confident of success.

They have strange obscure traditions concerning the creation. Some goddesses, they say, had a lump of earth suspended in a cord, and, by giving it a swing round, scattered about several pieces of land, which constituted Otaheite and the adjacent islands; and that they were all peopled by one of each sex, who originally fixed at Otaheite; but this only respects their own immediate creation; for they admit of an universal one before this. Their remotest account extends to Tatooma and Tapuppa, who are male and female rocks, and support our globe. These begat Totorro, who was killed and divided into parts or parcels of land; then Otaia and Oroo were produced, who were afterwards married, and first begat land, and then a race of gods. Otaia being killed, Oroo marries her son, a god, named Teorraha, whom she orders to create animals, more land, and every kind of food found upon the earth. She also ordered him to create a  
sky,

sky, which is supported by men, called *Teeferai*. The spots observable in the moon, they say, are groves of a certain tree, which once grew in Otaheite, and being accidentally destroyed, some doves carried its seeds thither, where they flourish at this day.

They have many religious and historical legends; one of which, relative to eating human flesh, is in substance as follows: A very long time ago there lived, at Otaheite, two men who were called *Tabeeai*; a name which is now given to cannibals. They inhabited the mountains, whence they issued forth and murdered the natives, whom they afterwards devoured, and thus prevented the progress of population. Two brothers, anxious to rid the country of such enemies, successfully put in practice a stratagem for their destruction. They lived farther upward than the *Tabeeai*, and were so situated, that they could converse with them without hazarding their own safety. They invited them to partake of an entertainment, to which they readily consented. The brothers then heated some stones in a fire, and thrusting them into pieces of *mabee*, requested one of the *Tabeeai* to open his mouth; when one of those pieces was immediately dropped in, and some water poured after it, which, in quenching the stone, made a hissing noise and killed him. The other was intreated to do the same; but at first declined it, mentioning the consequences

quences of his companion's eating: but upon being assured that the food was excellent, that these effects were only temporary, and that his companion would soon recover, he was so credulous as to swallow the bait, and was also killed.

Their bodies were then cut to pieces, and buried by the natives, who rewarded the brothers with the government of the island, for delivering them from such monsters. They resided at Whapaeenoo, a district in the island, where there now remains a bread-fruit tree, which was once the property of the *Tabeeais*. They had a woman who lived with them, that had two enormous teeth. After they were killed, she lived at Ota-ha; and, when she died, she was ranked among their deities. She did not, like the men, feed upon human flesh; but, from the prodigious size of her teeth, the natives still call any animal that has large tusks, *Tabeeai*.

This story, it must be acknowledged, is as natural as that of Hercules destroying the hydra, or of Jack the Giant-killer. But it does not appear that there is any moral couched under it, any more than under most of the old fables, which have been received as truths in ignorant ages. It, however, was not injudiciously introduced, as serving to express the detestation entertained here against cannibals. And yet it appears probable, from some circumstances, that the natives of these isles formerly fed upon human flesh.

Upon



Upon asking Omai a few questions upon this subject, he resolutely denied it; though, at the same time, he related a fact within his own knowledge, which almost establishes such a conjecture.

When the Bolabola men defeated those of Huaheine, many of his kinsmen were slain; but a relation of his had an opportunity of being revenged, when the people of Bolabola were worsted in their turn; and, cutting a piece of flesh from the thigh of one of his enemies, he broiled and devoured it. The offering made to the chief of the eye of the person sacrificed, appears to be a vestige of a custom that once existed to a greater extent.

The principal characteristics of the sovereign are, the being invested with the *maro*, the presiding at human sacrifices, and the blowing of the conch-shell. On hearing the latter, every subject is obliged to bring food, in proportion to his circumstances, to his royal residence. Their veneration for his name, on some occasions, they carry to a most extravagant height. When he accedes to the *maro*, if any words in the language are found to have a resemblance to it in sound, they are immediately changed for others; and, if any man should be presumptuous enough to continue the use of those words, not only he, but his whole family are put to death.

A similar fate attends all those who shall dare to apply the sacred name of the sovereign to any animal.

animal. Whence Omai, when in England, expressed his indignation, that the names of prince or princess should be given to our dogs or horses. But though death is the punishment for taking this liberty with the name of the sovereign, abuse against his government is only punished with the forfeiture of land and houses.

The sovereign never deigns to enter the habitation of any of his subjects; in every district, where he visits, he has houses belonging to himself. And if, by accident, he should ever be obliged to deviate from this rule, the habitation thus honoured with his presence, together with its furniture, is entirely burnt. When present, his subjects uncover to him as low as the waist; and when he is at any particular place, a pole with a piece of cloth affixed to it, is set up in some conspicuous part near, on which the same honours are bestowed. To the first part of this ceremony his brothers are entitled; but the women only uncover to the royal females.

They are even superstitious in respect to their sovereign, and esteem his person as almost sacred. To these circumstances, perhaps, he is indebted for the quiet possession of his dominions. Even the people of Tiaraboo admit his claim to the same honours, though they esteem their own chief as more powerful, and assert that, should the reigning family become extinct, he would succeed to the government of the whole island.

This

This indeed is probable, as Waheiadooa, exclusive of Tiaraboo, possesses many districts of Opooreanoo. The extent of his territories is, therefore, almost equal to those of Otoo; and his part of the island is more populous and fertile. His subjects, too, have shewn their superiority, by frequently defeating those of Otaheite-nooe, whom they hold in a contemptible light as warriors; and over whom they might be easily victorious, if their chief should be inclined to put it to the test.

The people, exclusive of the *Eree de boi*, and his family, are classed in the following order. The *Erees*, or powerful chiefs; the *Manaboone*, or vassals; and the *Teou*, or *Toutou*, servants or slaves. The men, agreeably to the regular institution, connect themselves with women of their respective ranks; but if with one of an inferior class, and she brings forth a child, it is not only preserved, but is entitled to the rank of the father; unless he should happen to be an *Eree*, in which case the child is killed.

If a woman of condition permits a man of inferior rank to officiate as a husband, the children they produce are also killed. And if a *Teou* be detected in an intrigue with a female of the royal family, he is punished with death. The son of the *Eree de boi*, at his birth, succeeds his father in titles and honours; but, if he has no children, the government devolves to his brother at his death.

death. Possessions, in other families, descend to the eldest son, who is nevertheless obliged to support his brothers and sisters, and allow them houses on his estates.

Otaheite is divided into several districts, the boundaries of which are generally rivulets or low hills; but the subdivisions, by which particular property is ascertained, are pointed out by large stones, which have continued from generation to generation. Quarrels are sometimes produced by the removal of these stones, which are decided by battle; each party claiming the assistance of his friends. But upon a complaint being properly made to the *Eree de boi*, he determines the difference in an amicable manner.

These offences, however, are not common; and property seems to be as secure here from long custom, as from the severest laws in other countries. It is an established practice among them, that crimes which are not of a general nature, are left to be punished by the party who is injured, supposing that he will decide as equitably as a person totally unconcerned: and long custom having allotted certain punishments for certain crimes, he may inflict them without being amenable to any one. If, for instance, any person be detected stealing, which is usually done in the night, the owner of the goods stolen may kill the thief immediately. But they seldom inflict so severe a punishment, unless the property taken is

very valuable; such as plaited hair and breast-plates. When only cloth, or hogs, are stolen, and the robber escapes, if, upon his being afterwards discovered, he engages to return the same number of hogs, and pieces of cloth, he is acquitted of the offence; or, at most, receives a slight beating.

If, in a quarrel, one person should kill another, the friends of the deceased attack the survivor and his adherents. If they are victorious, they take possession of the house and property of the other party; but if they are vanquished, the reverse takes place. Should a *Manaboone* kill the slave of a chief, the latter seizes the property of the former, who flies the country. A few months after, he returns, and finding his stock of hogs increased, makes a large present of these and other valuable articles, to the *Toutou's* master; who generally considers it as a compensation, and suffers him to repossess his premises. But it is not surprizing that the killing of a man should be considered as so trifling an offence, among a people who do not think it a crime to murder their own children. On conversing with them concerning such instances of unnatural cruelty, and asking them if their chiefs were not offended, and did not punish them? they said the chief had no right to interfere in such cases, every one being at liberty to do what he pleased with his own child.

Though

Though the people, their customs and manners, and the productions of the islands in the neighbourhood, may in general be considered the same as at Otaheite, yet there are a few differences. In the little island Mataia, or Osnaburgh Island, which lies twenty leagues east of Otaheite, is spoken a different dialect from that of Otaheite. The men of Mataia also wear long hair; and previous to their fighting, cover their arm with something beset with sharks' teeth, and their bodies with a skin of fishes, not unlike shagreen. They are likewise ornamented with polished pearl shells, which make a refulgent glittering in the sun; and they have a very large one before, which covers them like a shield.

In the language of Otaheite, there are many words and phrases very different from those of the islands to the westward of it. It is remarkable for producing, in great abundance, that delicious fruit which we call apples, which are not to be found in any of the others, except Eimeo. It also produces an odoriferous wood, called *eahoi*, which is much esteemed at the other isles. Huaheine and Eimeo produce more yams than the other islands; and upon the hills at Mouroua a particular bird is found, which is highly valued for its white feathers.

Besides the number or cluster of islands, extending from Mataia to Mouroua, we were informed by the people at Otaheite, that there was

a low uninhabited island, called Mopecha; and also several low islands to the north-eastward, at the distance of about two days sail with a fair wind.

At Mataeva, it is said to be customary for men to present their daughters to strangers who visit that island. The pairs however, must lie near each other for the space of five nights, without presuming to take any liberties. On the sixth evening, the father entertains his guest with food, and orders the daughter to receive him that night as her husband. Though the bed-fellow be ever so disagreeable to the stranger, he must not dare to express the least dislike; for that is an unpardonable affront, and punishable with death. Forty men of Bolabola, whom curiosity had incited to go to Mataeva, were treated in this manner; one of them having declared his aversion to the female who fell to his lot in the hearing of a boy, who mentioned it to the father. Fired with this information, the Mataevans fell upon them; but the Bolabolans killed thrice their own number, though with the loss of the whole party, except five. These at first concealed themselves in the woods, and afterwards effected their escape in a canoe.

The low isles are perhaps the farthest navigation performed by the inhabitants of Otaheite, and the Society Islands. Monsieur de Bougainville is certainly in an error, when he says, "These people

people sometimes navigate at the distance of more than three hundred leagues\*." For it is deemed a sort of prodigy, that a canoe, which was once driven from Otaheite in a storm, should have arrived at Mopeeha, though directly to leeward, at no great distance. Their knowledge of distant islands is merely traditional; communicated to them by the natives of those islands, who have been accidentally driven upon their coasts.

---

## CHAP. X.

*Prosecution of our Voyage, after our Departure from the Society Isles—Christmas Island discovered—Supplies of Fish and Turtle—Solar Eclipse—Distress of two Seamen who had lost their Way—Singular mode of refreshing himself practised by one of these Stragglers—Inscription left in a Bottle—Soil of the Island described—Trees and Plants—Birds, and other Animals—Further Particulars respecting Christmas Island.*

UPON our quitting Bolabola, and taking leave of the Society Islands, on Monday the 8th of December, we steered to the northward, with the wind between north-east and east;

\* Bougainville's Voyage autour du Monde, p. 228.



scarce ever having it in the south-east point, till after we had crossed the equator. Though a year and five months had now elapsed since our departure from England, during which period we had not been, upon the whole, unprofitably employed, Captain Cook was sensible that, with respect to the principal object of his instructions, our voyage might be considered, at this time, as only at its commencement; and, therefore, his attention to whatever might contribute towards our safety and final success, was now to be exerted as it were anew. He had with this view examined into the state of our provisions at the islands we had last visited; and having now, on leaving them, proceeded beyond the extent of his former discoveries, he ordered an accurate survey to be taken of all the stores that were in each ship, that, by being fully informed of the quantity and condition of every article, he might know how to use them to the greatest advantage.

Before we quitted the Society Isles, we had taken every opportunity of inquiring of the natives, whether there were any islands situate in a northerly or north-westerly direction from them; but it did not appear that they knew of any: nor did we meet with any thing by which the vicinity of land was indicated, till we began, about the latitude of  $8^{\circ}$  south, to see boobies, men-of-war birds, terns, tropic-birds, and a few other sorts. Our longitude, at this time, was  $205^{\circ}$  east. In  
the

the night between the 22d and 23d, we crossed the equinoctial line; and on the 24th, soon after day-break, we discovered land bearing north-east by east. It was found, upon our making a nearer approach to it, to be one of those low islands which are so frequently met with in this ocean between the tropics; that is, a narrow bank of land that incloses the sea within. We observed some cocoa-nut trees in two or three places; but the land in general had a very sterile aspect. At twelve o'clock it was about four miles distant. On the western side, we found the depth of water to be from forty to fourteen fathoms, over a sandy bottom.

Captain Cook being of opinion that this island would prove a convenient place for procuring turtle, resolved to anchor here. We accordingly dropped our anchors in thirty fathoms water; and a boat was immediately dispatched to search for a commodious landing-place. When she returned, the officer who had been employed in this search, reported, that he found no place where a boat could land; but that fish greatly abounded in the shoal-water, without the breakers. Early the next morning, which was Christmas-day, two boats were sent, one from each ship, to examine more accurately whether it was practicable to land; and, at the same time, two others were ordered out to fish at a grappling near the shore. These last returned about eight, with as many fish

as weighed upwards of two hundred pounds. Encouraged by this success, the Commodore dispatched them again after breakfast; and he then went himself in another boat to view the coast, and attempt landing, which, however, he found to be impracticable. The two boats which had been sent out on the same search, returned about twelve o'clock; and the master, who was in that belonging to the Resolution, reported to Captain Cook, that about four or five miles to the northward, there being a break in the land, and a channel in the lagoon, there was consequently a proper place for landing; and that he had found off this entrance the same soundings as we had where we now were stationed. In consequence of this report we weighed, and, after two or three trips, anchored again over a bottom of fine dark sand, before a little island lying at the entrance of the lagoon.

On Friday the 26th, in the morning, the Commodore ordered Captain Clerke to send out a boat, with an officer in it, to the south-east part of the lagoon, in quest of turtle; and went himself with Mr. King, each in a boat, to the north-east part. It was his intention to have gone to the eastern extremity; but the wind not permitting it, he and Mr. King landed more to leeward, on a sandy flat, where they caught one turtle, which was the only one they saw in the lagoon. They waded through the water to an island, where  
they

they found nothing but a few birds. Captain Cook, leaving Mr. King here to observe the sun's meridian altitude, proceeded to the land that bounds the sea towards the north-west, which he found even more barren than the last-mentioned isle; but walking over to the sea-coast, he observed five turtles close to the shore, one of which he caught, he then returned on board, as did Mr. King soon afterwards. Though so few turtles were observed by these two gentlemen, we did not despair of a supply; for some of the officers of the Discovery, who had been ashore to the southward of the channel leading into the lagoon, had more success, and caught several.

The next morning, the cutter and pinnace were dispatched, under the command of Mr. King, to the south-east part of the island, within the lagoon, to catch turtle; and the small cutter was sent towards the north for the same purpose. Some of Captain Clerke's people having been on shore all night, had been so fortunate as to turn upwards of forty turtles on the sand, which were this day brought on board; and, in the course of the afternoon, the party detached to the northward returned with half a dozen; and being sent back again, continued there till we departed from the island, having, upon the whole, pretty good success. The day following (the 28th) Captain Cook, accompanied by Mr. Bailey, landed on the island situate between the two channels into  
the

the lagoon, to prepare the telescopes for observing the solar eclipse that was to happen on the 30th. Towards noon, Mr. King returned with one boat and eight turtles; seven being left behind to be brought by the other boat, whose people were occupied in catching more; and, in the evening, the same boat conveyed them provisions and water. Mr. Williamson now went to superintend this business in the room of Mr. King, who remained on board, in order to attend the observation of the eclipse. The next day the two boats, laden with turtle, were sent back to the ship by Mr. Williamson, who at the same time, in a message to Captain Cook, requested that the boats might be ordered round by sea, as he had discovered a landing-place on the south-east side of the island, where the greatest numbers of turtles were caught; so that, by dispatching the boats thither, the trouble of carrying them over the land (as had been hitherto done) to the inside of the lagoon, would be saved. This advice was followed.

On Tuesday the 30th, Captain Cook, and Messrs. King and Bailey, repaired in the morning to the small island above-mentioned, to observe the eclipse of the sun. The sky was overcast at times; but it was clear when the eclipse ended. In the afternoon, the party who had been employed in catching turtle at the south-eastern part of the island, returned on board, except a sailor

sailor belonging to Captain Clerke's ship, who had been missing for two days. At first, there were two men who had lost their way; but happening to disagree with respect to the track that was most likely to bring them to their companions, they had separated; and one of them found means to rejoin the party, after an absence of twenty-four hours, during which he had experienced great distress. There being no fresh water in the whole island, and not one cocoa-nut tree in that part of it, he, in order to allay his thirst, had recourse to the extraordinary expedient of drinking the blood of turtle, which he killed for that purpose. His method of refreshing himself, when fatigued, was equally singular, though he said he felt the good effects of it: he undressed himself, and lay down in the shallow water on the beach for some time.

How these two men had contrived to lose their way, was a matter of astonishment. The land over which their journey lay, from the sea-coast to the lagoon, where the boats were stationed, did not exceed three miles across; nor was there any thing that could impede their view; for the country was level, with a few shrubs dispersed about it; and, from many parts, the masts of our vessels could be easily discerned. This, however, was a rule of direction which they did not think of; nor did they recollect in what part of the island the ships lay at anchor; and they were totally at a  
loss

lofs how to get back to them, or to the party they had fo carelefsly ftraggled from. Confidering what ftrange people the generality of failors are, while on fhore, we might, inftead of being much furprized that thefe two fhould thus lofe themfelves, rather wonder that no more of the party were miffing.

Captain Clerke was no fooner informed that one of the ftragglers was ftill in this difagreeable fttuation, than he detached a party in fearch of him; but neither the man nor the party having returned, the next morning the Commodore ordered two boats into the lagoon, to profecute the fearch by different tracks. In a fhort time after, Captain Clerke's detachment returned, with their loft companion; in confequence of which the boats difpatched into the lagoon were called back by fignal. This man's diftrefs muft have been far greater than that of the other ftraggler; not only as he had been loft a longer time, but as he was too delicate to drink turtle's blood.

Having fome yams and cocoa-nuts on board, in a ftate of vegetation, we planted them, by Captain Cook's order, on the fmall ifland where he had obferved the late eclipse; and fome feeds of melons were fown in another place. The Captain alfo left on that little ifle a bottle, containing the following infcription:

*Georgius Tertius, Rex, 31 Decembris, 1777.*

*Naves* { *Refolution, Jac. Cook, Pr.*  
          { *Discovery, Car. Clerke, Pr.*

On

On Thursday the 1st of January, 1778, the Commodore sent out several boats to bring on board our different parties employed ashore, with the turtle which they had caught. It being late before this business was completed, he thought proper to defer sailing till the next morning. We procured at this island, for both ships, about three hundred turtles, which weighed, one with another, about ninety pounds: they were all of the green sort, and perhaps not inferior in goodness to any in the world. We also caught, with hook and line, a great quantity of fish, principally consisting of cavallies, snappers, and a few rock-fish of two species, one with whitish streaks scattered about, and the other with numerous blue spots.

The soil of this island (to which Captain Cook gave the name of Christmas Island, as we kept that festival here) is, in some places, light and blackish, composed of sand, the dung of birds, and rotten vegetables. In other parts it is formed of broken coral-stones, decayed shells, and other marine productions. These are deposited in long, narrow ridges, lying parallel with the sea-coast; and must have been thrown up by the waves, though they do not reach, at present, within a mile of some of these places. This seems to prove incontestably, that the island has been produced by different accessions from the sea, and is in a state of augmentation; the broken pieces of coral, and likewise many of the shells, being  
too



too large and heavy to have been brought from the beach by any birds to the places where they are now lying. We could not find any where a drop of fresh water, though we frequently dug for it. We met with several ponds of salt water, which, as they had no visible communication with the sea, were probably filled by the water filtering through the sand during the time of high tides. One of the men who lost their way found some salt on the south-eastern part of the island. We could not discover the smallest traces of any human creature having ever been here before us; and, indeed, should any one be accidentally driven on the island, or left there, he would hardly be able to prolong his existence. For, though there are birds and fish in abundance, there are no visible means of allaying thirst, nor any vegetable that would serve as a substitute for bread, or correct the bad effects of an animal diet. On the few cocoa-nut trees upon the island we found very little fruit, and that little not good.

A few low trees were observed in some parts, besides several small shrubs and plants, which grew in a very languid manner. We found a sort of purslain, a species of *sida*, or Indian mallow, and another plant that seemed, from its leaves, to be a *mesembryanthemum*; with two sorts of grass. Under the low trees sat vast numbers of a new species of tern, or egg-bird, black above, and white below, having a white arch on the forehead.

head. These birds are somewhat larger than the common noddy; their eggs are bluish, and speckled with black. There were likewise many common boobies; a sort greatly resembling a gannet; and a chocolate-coloured species, with a white-belly. Men-of-war birds, curlews, plovers, tropic-birds, petrels, &c. are also to be seen here. We saw several rats, smaller than ours. There were numbers of land-crabs, and small lizards.

Christmas Island is supposed by Captain Cook to be between fifteen and twenty leagues in circuit. Its form is semi-circular; or like the moon in her last quarter, the two horns being the north and south points. The west side, or the small island situate at the entrance into the lagoon, lies in the longitude of  $202^{\circ} 30'$  east, and in the latitude of  $1^{\circ} 59'$  north.

Like most of the other isles in this ocean, Christmas Island is surrounded by a reef of coral rock, extending but a little way from the shore; and further out than this reef, on the western side, is a bank of sand, which extends a mile into the sea. There is good anchorage on this bank, in any depth between eighteen and thirty fathoms. During our continuance here, the wind generally blew a fresh gale at east by south, or east; and we had constantly a great swell from the northward, which broke on the reef in a very violent surf.

## C H A P. XI.

*Three Islands discovered—The Inhabitants of Atooi approach us in their Canoes—Their Persons described—Some of them venture on board—Their Amazement on that Occasion—Precautions against importing the Venereal Disease into the Island—One of the Natives killed—The Ships cast Anchor—The Commodore's Reception on landing—His Excursion into the Country with Messrs. Webber and Anderson—Description of a Morai and its Obelisk—The Custom of offering human Victims prevalent among these People—Curious feathered Cloaks and Caps—The Revolution driven from Atooi Road—The Isle of Oneebow visited—Some of our People are detained on Shore—Animals and Seeds left at Oneebow—Customs of the Natives—The Ships proceed to the Northward.*

**W**EIGHING anchor at day-break, on Friday the 2d of January, 1778, we resumed our northerly course, with a gentle breeze at east, and east-south-east, which continued till we arrived in the latitude of  $7^{\circ} 45'$  north, and the longitude of 205 east, where we had a day of perfect calm. A north-east-by-east wind then succeeded, which blew faintly at first, but freshened as we proceeded northward. We daily observed tropic-birds, men-of-war birds, boobies,

&c.

&c. and between the latitude of  $10^{\circ}$  and  $11^{\circ}$  north, we saw several turtles. Though all these are considered as signs of the proximity of land, we discovered none till early in the morning of Sunday the 18th, when an island appeared, bearing north-east-by-east. Not long after, more land was seen, which bore north, and was totally detached from the former. At noon, the first was supposed to be eight or nine leagues distant. Our longitude at this time was  $200^{\circ} 41'$  east, and our latitude,  $21^{\circ} 12'$  north. The next day, at sun rise, the island first seen bore east, at the distance of several leagues. Not being able to reach this, we shaped our course for the other; and soon after observed a third island, bearing west-north-west.

We had now a fine breeze at east-by-north; and at noon the second island, named Atooi, for the east end of which we were steering, was about two leagues distant. As we made a nearer approach, many of the inhabitants put off from the shore in their canoes, and very readily came along-side the ships. We were agreeably surprised to find that they spoke a dialect of the Otaheitean language. They could not be prevailed upon by any entreaties to come on board. Captain Cook tied some brass medals to a rope, which he gave to those who were in one of the canoes; and they, in return, fastened some mackarel to the rope, by way of equivalent. This

was repeated; and some small nails, or pieces of iron, were given them; for which they gave in exchange some more fish, and a sweet potatoe; a sure indication of their having some notion of bartering, or at least, of returning one present for another. One of them even offered for sale the piece of stuff which he wore about his waist. These people did not exceed the ordinary size, and were stoutly made. Their complexion was brown; and though there appeared to be little difference in the casts of their colour, there was a considerable variation in their features. Most of them had their hair cropped rather short; a few had it tied in a bunch at the top of the head; and others suffered it to flow loose. It seemed to be naturally black; but the generality of them had stained it with some stuff which communicated to it a brownish colour. Most of them had pretty long beards. They had no ornaments about their persons, nor did we observe that they had their ears perforated. Some of them were *tattooed* on the hands, or near the groin; and the pieces of cloth, which were worn by them round their middle, were curiously coloured with white, black, and red. They seemed to be mild and good-natured; and were furnished with no arms of any kind, except some small stones, which they had manifestly brought for their own defence; and these they threw into the sea when they found that there was no occasion for them.

As

As we perceived no signs of an anchoring-place at this eastern extremity of the island, we bore away to leeward, and ranged along the south-east side, at the distance of about a mile and a half from the shore. The canoes left us when we made sail; but others came off, as we proceeded along the coast, and brought with them pigs and some excellent potatoes, which they exchanged for whatever we offered to them; and several small pigs were purchased by us for a six-penny nail. We passed divers villages; some of which were situated near the sea, and others further up the country. The inhabitants of all of them came in crowds to the shore, and assembled on the elevated places to take a view of the ships. On this side of the island the land rises in a gentle acclivity from the sea to the bottom of the mountains, which occupy the central part of the country, except at one place near the eastern end, there they rise immediately from the sea: they seemed to be composed of stone, or rocks lying in horizontal *strata*. We observed a few trees about the villages; near which we could also discern several plantations of sugar-canes and plantains. We continued to sound, but did not strike ground with a line of fifty fathoms, till we came abreast of a low point, near the north-west extremity of the island, where we found from twelve to fourteen fathoms, over a rocky bottom. Having passed this point, we

met with twenty fathoms, then sixteen, twelve, and at last five, over a bottom of sand. We spent the night in standing off and on; and, the next morning, stood in for the land. We were met by several canoes filled with natives, some of whom ventured to come on board.

None of the inhabitants we ever met with before, in any other island or country, were so astonished as these people were upon entering a ship. Their eyes were incessantly roving from one object to another; and the wildness of their looks and gestures, fully indicated their perfect ignorance with respect to every thing they saw; and strongly marked to us, that they had never, till the present time, been visited by Europeans, nor been acquainted with any of our commodities, except iron. This metal, however, they had in all probability only heard of, or had perhaps known it in some inconsiderable quantity, brought to them at a remote period. They asked for it by the appellation of *kamaité*, referring probably to some instrument, in making which iron could be serviceably employed; for they applied that name to the blade of a knife, though they had no idea of that particular instrument, which they could not even handle properly. They also frequently called iron by the name of *toe*, which signifies a hatchet, or adze. On our shewing them some beads, they first asked what they were; and then, whether they were to be eaten. But, on  
their

their being informed, that they were to be hung in their ears, they rejected them as useless. They were equally indifferent with regard to a looking-glass that we offered them, and returned it for a similar reason. China cups, plates of earthen ware, and other things of that kind, were so new to them, that they asked whether they were made of wood. They were, in many respects, naturally polite; or, at least, cautious of giving offence. Some of them, just before their venturing on board, repeated a long prayer; and others, afterwards, sung and made various motions with their hands. On their first entering the ship, they attempted to steal every thing that they could lay hands on, or rather to take it openly, as if they supposed that we either should not resent such behaviour, or not hinder it. But we soon convinced them of their error; and when they observed that we kept a watchful eye over them, they became less active in appropriating to themselves what did not belong to them.

About nine o'clock Captain Cook dispatched Lieutenant Williamson, with three armed boats, to look out for a proper landing-place, and for fresh water; with orders, that, if he should find it necessary to land in search of the latter, he should not allow more than one man to accompany him out of the boats. The very moment they were putting off from the ship, one of the islanders having stolen a cleaver, leaped over-



board, got into his canoe, and hastened towards the shore, while the boats pursued him in vain.

The reason of the Commodore's order that the crews of the boats should not go on shore, was, that he might prevent, if possible, the importation of a dangerous disease into this island, which he knew some of our people now laboured under, and which we, unfortunately, had already communicated to other islands in this ocean. From the same motive, he commanded that all female visitants should be excluded from both the ships. Many persons of this sex had come off in the canoes. Their features, complexion, and stature, were not very different from those of the men; and though their countenances were extremely open and agreeable, few traces of delicacy were visible either in their faces, or other proportions. The only difference in their dress, was their having a piece of cloth about their bodies, reaching from near the middle almost down to the knees, instead of the *maro* worn by the male-sex. They were as much inclined to favour us with their company on board, as some of the men were; but the Commodore was extremely desirous of preventing all connection, which might in all probability convey an irreparable injury to themselves, and afterwards through their means, to the whole nation. Another prudent precaution was taken, by strictly enjoining, that no person capable of communicat-

ing

ing the infection should be sent upon duty out of the ships.

Captain Cook had paid equal attention to the same object, when he first visited the Friendly Isles; but he afterwards found, to his great regret, that his endeavours had not succeeded. And there is reason to apprehend, that this will constantly be the case, in such voyages as ours, whenever it is necessary that many people should be employed on shore. The opportunities and incitements to an amorous intercourse are then too numerous to be effectually guarded against; and however confident a commander may be of the health of his men, he is often undeceived too late. Among a number of men, there are in general to be found some, who, out of bashfulness, endeavour to conceal their having any venereal symptoms: and there are others so profligate and abandoned, as not to care to whom they communicate this disease. We had an instance of the last remark at Tongataboo, in the Gunner of the *Discovery*, who had been stationed on shore. After knowing that he had contracted this disorder, he continued to have connections with different women, who were supposed to have been, till that time, free from any infection. His companions remonstrated to him on this scandalous behaviour without effect, till Captain Clerke, being informed of such a dangerous irregularity of conduct, ordered him to repair on board.

Waiting for the return of our boats, which had been sent out to reconnoitre the coast, we stood off and on with the ships. Towards mid-day, Mr. Williamson came back, and reported that he had observed behind a beach, near one of the villages, a large pond, which was said by the natives to contain fresh water; and that there was tolerable anchoring-ground before it. He also mentioned, that he had made an attempt to land in another place, but was prevented by the islanders, who coming down in great numbers to the boats, endeavoured to take away the oars, mufquets, and every other article which they could lay hold of; and crowded so thick upon him and his people, that he was under the necessity of firing, by which one man was killed. This unfortunate circumstance, however, was not known to Captain Cook till after we had quitted the island; so that 'all his measures were directed as if no affair of that kind had happened. Mr. Williamson informed him, that as soon as the man fell, he was taken up and carried off by his countrymen, who then retired from the boats; but still they made signals for our people to land, which they declined. It did not appear that the natives had the least intention of killing, or even hurting, any of Mr. Williamson's party; but they seemed to have been excited by curiosity alone, to get from them what they had, being  
prepared

prepared to give in return any thing that appertained to themselves.

Captain Cook then dispatched one of the boats to lie in the best anchoring-ground; and when she had gained this station, he bore down with the ships, and cast anchor in twenty-five fathoms water, over a sandy bottom. The eastern point of the road, which was the low point already mentioned, bore south  $51^{\circ}$  east; the west point, north  $65^{\circ}$  west; and the village near which the fresh water was said to be, was one mile distant. The ships being thus stationed, between three and four in the afternoon, the Captain went ashore with three armed boats, and twelve of the marines, with a view of examining the water, and trying the disposition of the inhabitants, who had assembled in considerable numbers on a sandy beach before the village; behind it was a valley, in which was the piece of water. The moment he leaped on shore, all the islanders fell prostrate upon their faces, and continued in that posture of humiliation, till by signs, he prevailed on them to rise. They then presented to him many small pigs, with plantain-trees, making use of nearly the same ceremonies which we had seen practised, on similar occasions, at the Society and other isles; and a long oration or prayer being pronounced by an individual, in which others of the assembly occasionally joined. Captain Cook signified his acceptance of their proffered friendship, by bestowing

bestowing on them, in return, such presents as he had brought ashore. This introductory business being ended, he stationed a guard upon the beach, and was then conducted by some of the natives to the water, which he found extremely good, and so considerable, that it might be denominated a lake. After this, he returned on board, and issued orders that preparations should be made for filling our water-casks in the morning; at which time he went ashore with some of his people, having a party of marines for a guard.

They had no sooner landed, than a trade was entered into for potatoes and hogs, which the islanders gave in exchange for nails and pieces of iron. Far from giving any obstruction to our men who were occupied in watering, they even assisted them in rolling the casks to and from the pool, and performed with alacrity whatever was required of them. Captain Cook leaving the command at this station to Mr. Williamson, who had landed with him, made an excursion into the country, up the valley, being accompanied by Messrs. Anderson and Webber, and followed by a numerous train of natives; one of whom, who had been very active in keeping the others in order, the Captain made choice of as a guide. This man, from time to time, proclaiming the approach of our gentlemen, every person who met them, fell prostrate on the ground, and remained in that humble position till they had passed.

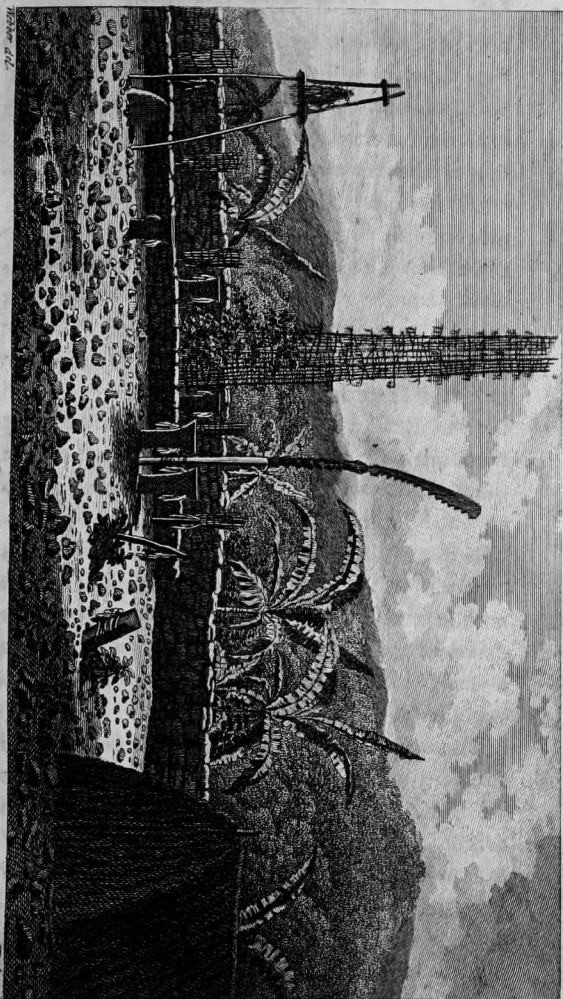
passed. This, as we were afterwards informed, is their method of shewing respect to their own great chiefs.

We had observed at every village, as we ranged along the coast in the ships, one or more elevated white objects, resembling pyramids, or rather obelisks; one of which, supposed by Captain Cook to be at least fifty feet in height, was very conspicuous from our anchoring-station, and seemed to be at a small distance up this valley. To have a nearer view of it, was the principal motive of our gentlemen's walk. Their guide was acquainted with their desire of being conducted to it; but it happened to be in such a situation, that they could not get at it, the pool of water separating it from them. However, as there was another of the same kind about half a mile distant, upon their side of the valley, they set out to visit that. As soon as they reached it, they perceived that it was situate in a burying-ground, or *morai*, which bore a striking resemblance, in several respects, to those they had seen at Otaheite and other islands in this ocean. It was an oblong space, of considerable extent, environed by a stone-wall, four or five feet high. The inclosed space was loosely paved; and, at one end of it, was placed the obelisk or pyramid, called by the natives *benananoo*, which was an exact model of the larger one that we had discerned from our ships. It was about twenty feet in height,

height, and four feet square at the base. Its four sides were formed of small poles interwoven with twigs and branches, thus composing an indifferent wicker-work, hollow within from the top to the bottom. It appeared to in a ruinous state, and had been originally covered with a thin greyish cloth. On each side of it were long pieces of wicker-work, termed *beraenee*, in a condition equally ruinous, with two poles inclining towards each other at one corner, where some plantains were placed on a board, fixed at the height of about half a dozen feet. This was called by the islanders *berairemy*, and they said, that the fruit was an offering to their deity. Before the *benananoo* were several pieces of wood, carved into some resemblance of human figures. There was also a stone near two feet in height, covered with cloth. Adjoining to this, on the outside of the *morai*, was a small shed, which they denominated *bareepaboo*; and before it there was a grave, where the remains of a woman had been deposited.

There was a house or shed, called *bemanaa*, on the further side of the area of the *morai*; it was about forty feet in length, ten or eleven feet in height, and ten in breadth in the middle, but narrower at each end; though considerably longer, it was lower than their common habitations. Opposite the entrance into this house, stood two images near three feet high, cut out of

*Creek: Tongue River Edition.*



*A. MORAL in ATTOI.*



*Cook's Voyage, Octavo Edition.*



THE INSIDE OF THE HOUSE, IN THE MORAI IN ATOOI.

one piece of wood, with pedestals: they were said to be *Eatooa no Veheina*, or representations of goddesses, and were not very indifferent either in point of execution or design. On the head of one of them was a cylindrical cap, not unlike the head-dress at Otaheite, called *tomou*; and on that of the other, a carved helmet, somewhat resembling those of the ancient warriors; and both of them had pieces of cloth fastened about the loins, and hanging down a considerable way. There was also at the side of each, a piece of carved wood, with cloth hung on it. Before the pedestals lay a quantity of fern, which had been placed there at different times. In the middle of the house, and before the images just described, was an oblong space, inclosed by an edging of stone, and covered with shreds of cloth: this was the grave of seven chiefs, and was called *heueue*.

Our gentlemen had already met with so many instances of resemblance, between the *morai* they were now visiting, and those of the islands they had lately quitted, that they entertained little doubt in their minds, that the similarity existed also in the rites here solemnized, and particularly in the horrid oblation of human victims. Their suspicions were soon confirmed; for on one side of the entrance into the *bemanaa*, they observed a small square place, and another still smaller; and on asking what these were, they were informed by their conductor, that in one of them was interred

interred a man who had been sacrificed; and in the other, a hog, which had also been offered up to the deity. At no great distance from these, were three other square inclosed places, with two pieces of carved wood at each of them, and a heap of fern upon them. These were the graves of three chiefs; and before them was an inclosed space, of an oblong figure, called *Tangata-taboo* by our gentlemen's guide, who declared to them that three human sacrifices, one at the funeral of each chief, had been there buried.

Every appearance induced the Commodore to believe, that this inhuman practice was very general here. The island seemed to abound with such places of sacrifice as this, at which he was now present, and which was probably one of the most inconsiderable of them; being much less conspicuous than some others which we had observed as we sailed along the coast, and particularly than that on the opposite side of the piece of water running through this valley; the white pyramid of which in all probability, derived its colour solely from the consecrated cloth put over it. In many spots within this burying-ground, were planted trees of the *morinda citrifolia*, and *cordia sebastina*, besides several plants of the *ete*, with the leaves of which the *bemanaa* was thatched.

The journey of our gentlemen to and from this *morai* lay through the plantations. Most of the ground was perfectly flat, with ditches intersecting

perfecting different parts, and roads that seemed to have been raised to some height by art. The intervening spaces, in general, were planted with *taro*, which grew with great vigour. There were several spots where the cloth-mulberry was planted, in regular rows; this also grew vigorously. The cocoa-trees were in a less thriving condition, and were all low; but the plantain-trees, though not large, made a pretty good appearance. Upon the whole, the trees that are most numerous around this village, are the *cordia sebastina*: the greatest part of it is situate near the beach, and consists of upwards of sixty houses there; but there may perhaps be near forty more scattered about, towards the *morai*.

After the Commodore, and Messrs. Anderson and Webber, had carefully examined whatever was worthy of notice about the *morai*, and the latter had taken drawings of it, and of the surrounding country, they returned by a different route. They found a multitude of people collected at the beach, and a brisk trade for fowls, pigs, and vegetables, going on there, with the greatest order and decorum. At noon, Captain Cook went on board to dinner, and then sent Mr. King to take the command of the party on shore. During the afternoon he landed again, accompanied by Captain Clerke, intending to make another excursion up the country: but, before he could execute this design, the day was

too far advanced; he therefore relinquished his intention for the present, and no other opportunity afterwards occurred. Towards sun-set, he and his people returned on board, after having procured, in the course of this day, nine tons of water, and (principally by exchanging nails and pieces of iron) seventy or eighty pigs, some fowls, plantains, potatoes, and *taro* roots. In this commercial intercourse, the islanders deserved our best commendations, making no attempts to cheat us, either along-side our ships, or on shore. Some of them, indeed, as we have already related, betrayed at first a pilfering disposition; or, perhaps they imagined that they had a right to all they could lay their hands upon: but they quickly desisted from a conduct, which we convinced them could not be persevered in with impunity.

Among the various articles which they brought to barter this day, we were particularly struck with a sort of cloak and cap, which, even in more polished countries, might be esteemed elegant. These cloaks are nearly of the shape and size of the short ones worn by the men in Spain, and by the women in England, tied loosely before, and reaching to the middle of the back. The ground of them is a net-work, with the most beautiful red and yellow feathers so closely fixed upon it, that the surface, both in point of smoothness and glossiness, resembles the richest velvet. The method of varying the mixture is very different;

ferent ; some of them having triangular spaces of yellow and red alternately ; others, a sort of crescent ; while some were entirely red, except that they had a broad yellow border. The brilliant colours of the feathers, in those cloaks that were new, had a very fine effect. The natives, at first, refused to part with one of these cloaks for any thing that we offered in exchange, demanding no less a price than one of our musquets. They afterwards, however, suffered us to purchase some of them for very large nails. Those of the best sort were scarce ; and it is probable, that they are used only on particular occasions.

The caps are made in the form of a helmet, with the middle part, or crest, frequently of a hand's breadth. They fit very close upon the head, and have notches to admit the ears. They consist of twigs and osiers, covered with a network, into which feathers are wrought, as upon the cloaks, but somewhat closer, and less diversified ; the major part being red, with some yellow, green, or black stripes, on the sides. These caps, in all probability, complete the dress with the cloaks ; for the islanders appeared sometimes in both together.

We could not conjecture from whence they obtained such a quantity of these beautiful feathers ; but we soon procured intelligence respecting one sort ; for they afterwards brought for sale great numbers of skins of a small red species of bird,

frequently tied up in bunches of twenty or upwards, or having a wooden skewer run through them. At first, those that were purchased, consisted only of the skin from behind the wings forward; but we afterwards obtained many with the hind part, including the feet and tail. The former instantly suggested to us the origin of the fable of the birds of paradise being destitute of legs; and sufficiently explained that particular. The reason assigned by the inhabitants of Atooi, for the custom of cutting off the feet of these birds, is, that by this practice they can preserve them the more easily, without losing any part which they consider as valuable.

The red-bird of this island was, according to Mr. Anderson, a species of *merops*, about as large as a sparrow; its colour was a beautiful scarlet, with the tail and wings black; and it had an arched bill, twice as long as the head, which, with the feet, was of a reddish hue. The contents of the heads were taken out, as in the birds of paradise; but we did not find that they practised any other mode of preserving them, than simple drying: for the skins, though they were moist, had neither a smell nor taste that could give any reason for suspecting the use of anti-putrescent substances.

On Thursday the 22d, we had almost continual rain for the whole morning. The wind was at south-east, south-south-east, and south; and the  
surf

surf broke so high upon the shore, that our boats were prevented from landing. The Resolution was not in a very secure situation, there being breakers within the length of little more than two cables from her stern. The natives, notwithstanding the surf, ventured out in their canoes, bringing off to our ships hogs and vegetables, which they exchanged, as before, for our commodities. One of their number, who offered some fish-hooks for sale, was observed to have a very small parcel fastened to the string of one of them, which he carefully separated, and reserved for himself, when he disposed of the hook. When asked what it was, he pointed to his belly, and intimated something of its being dead; saying, at the same time, that it was bad. He was requested to open the parcel, which he did with great reluctance; and we found that it contained a small thin piece of flesh, which had, to all appearance, been dried, but was at present wet with salt water. Imagining that it might be human flesh, we put the question to the producer of it; who answered, that the flesh was part of a man. Another of the islanders, who stood near him, was then asked, whether it was a custom among them to eat their enemies who had been slain in battle? and he immediately replied in the affirmative.

In the afternoon, we had some intervals of fair weather. The wind then changed to the east



and north-east; but, towards the evening, it veered back again to south-south-east. The rain also returning, continued the whole night, but was not accompanied with much wind. At seven the next morning, a north-easterly breeze springing up, Captain Cook ordered the anchors of his ship to be taken up, with a view of removing her further out. As soon as the last anchor was up, the wind veering to the east, rendered it necessary to make all the sail he could, for the purpose of clearing the shore; so that before he had good sea-room, he was driven considerably to leeward. He endeavoured to regain the road; but having a strong current against him, and very little wind, he could not accomplish that design. He therefore dispatched Messrs. King and Williamson ashore with three boats, to procure water and refreshments, sending at the same time an order to Captain Clerke, to put to sea after him, if he should find that the Resolution was unable to recover the road.

The Commodore having hopes of finding a road, or perhaps a harbour, at the west end of the island, was the less anxious about regaining his former station. But as he had sent the boats thither, he kept as much as possible to windward; notwithstanding which, at noon, our ship was three leagues to leeward. As we approached the west end, we found that the coast rounded gradually to the north-east, without forming a cove,

or creek, wherein a vessel might be sheltered from the violence of the swell, which, rolling in from the northward, broke against the shore in an amazing surf: all hopes therefore, of meeting with a harbour here soon vanished. Many of the natives, in their canoes, followed us as we stood out to sea, bartering various articles. As we were extremely unwilling, notwithstanding the suspicious circumstance of the preceding day, to believe that these people were cannibals, we now made some further inquiries on this subject. A small instrument of wood, beset with shark's teeth, had been purchased; which, as it resembled the saw or knife made use of by the savages of New-Zealand to dissect the bodies of their enemies, was suspected by us to be employed here for the same purpose. One of the islanders being questioned on this point, informed us, that the instrument above-mentioned served the purpose of cutting out the fleshy part of the belly, when any person was slain. This explained and confirmed the circumstance before related, of the man's pointing to his belly. The native, however, from whom we now received this intelligence, being asked whether his countrymen eat the part thus cut out? strongly denied it; but when the question was repeated, he shewed some degree of apprehension, and swam off to his canoe. An elderly man, who sat foremost in the canoe, was then asked, whether they

eat the flesh? and he answered in the affirmative. The question being put to him a second time, he again affirmed the fact; adding, that it was favoury food,

The boats returned about seven o'clock in the evening, with a few hogs, some plantains and roots, and two tons of water. Mr. King reported to the Commodore, that the islanders were very numerous at the watering-place, and had brought great numbers of hogs to barter; but our people had not commodities with them adequate to the purchase of them all. He also mentioned, that the surf had run so very high, that it was with extreme difficulty our men landed, and afterwards got back into the boats.

On Saturday the 24th, at day-break, we found that our ship had been carried by the currents to the north-west and north; so that the western extremity of Atooi bore east, at the distance of one league. A northerly breeze sprung up soon after, and Captain Cook expecting that this would bring the Discovery to sea, steered for Onceheow, a neighbouring island, which then bore south-west, with a view of anchoring there. He continued to steer for it till past eleven, at which time he was at the distance of about six miles from it. But not seeing the Discovery, he was apprehensive lest some ill consequence might arise from our separating so far; he therefore relinquished the design of visiting Onceheow for the present, and

and stood back to Atooi, intending to cast anchor again in the road, in order to complete our supply of water. At two o'clock, the northerly wind was succeeded by calms and variable light airs, which continued till eleven at night. We stretched to the south-east, till early in the morning of the 25th, when we tacked and stood in for Atooi road; and, not long after, we were joined by the Discovery. We were utterly unable to regain the road; and, by the morning of the 29th, the currents had carried us to the westward, within nine or ten miles of Onecheow. Weary with plying so unsuccessfully, Captain Cook laid aside all thoughts of returning to Atooi, and resumed his intention of paying a visit to Onecheow. With this view, he dispatched the master in a boat, to sound along the coast, and search for a landing-place, and afterwards for fresh water. In the mean time, the ships followed under an easy sail. The master at his return reported, that there was tolerable anchorage all along the coast; and that he had landed in one place, but could not find any fresh water.

Captain Cook being informed by some of the natives, who had come off to the ships, that fresh water might be obtained at a village which we saw at a little distance, ran down, and cast anchor before it, about six furlongs from the shore, the depth of water being twenty-six fathoms. The Discovery anchored at a greater distance

from the shore, in twenty-three fathoms. The fourth-eastern point of Oneecheow bore south, 65 east, about one league distant; and another island which we had discovered the preceding night, named Tahogra, bore south, 61° west, at the distance of seven leagues. Before we anchored, several canoes had come off to us, bringing potatoes, yams, and small pigs, besides mats. The people who were in them resembled in their persons the inhabitants of Atooi; and, like them, were acquainted with the use of iron, which they asked for by the names of *toe* and *bamaite*, readily parting with all their commodities for pieces of this metal. Some more canoes soon reached our ships, after they had come to anchor; but the islanders who were in these had apparently no other object, than to make us a formal visit. Many of them came on board, and crouched down upon the deck; nor did they quit that humble posture, till they were requested to rise. Several women, whom they had brought with them, remained along-side in the canoes, behaving with much less modesty than the females of Atooi; and, at intervals, they all joined in a song, which, though not very melodious, was performed in the exactest concert, by beating time upon their breasts with their hands. The men who had come on board did not continue long with us; and before their departure, some of them

them desired permission to lay down locks of their hair on the deck.

The curious inquiry, whether these islanders were cannibals, was this day renewed; and the subject did not arise from any questions put by us, but from a circumstance that seemed to remove all doubt. One of the natives, who wished to get in at the gun-room port, was refused; and he then asked, whether we should kill and eat him, if he should come in? accompanying this question with signs so expressive, that we did not entertain a doubt with respect to his meaning. We had now an opportunity of retorting the question as to this practice; and a man behind the other, in the canoe, instantly replied, that if we were killed on shore, they would not scruple to eat us: not that he meant they would destroy us for that purpose, but that their devouring us would be the consequence of our being at enmity with them.

Mr. Gore was sent in the afternoon, with three armed boats, in search of the most commodious landing-place; being also directed to look for fresh water when he should get on shore. He returned in the evening, and reported to Captain Cook, that he had landed at the village above-mentioned, and had been conducted to a well about half a mile up the country; but that the water which it contained was in too small a quantity for our purpose, and the road that led to it

was

was extremely bad. The next day Mr. Gore was sent ashore again, with a guard and a party, to trade with the inhabitants for refreshments. The Commodore's intention was to have followed soon afterwards; and he went from the ship with that design. But the surf had so greatly increased by this time, that he was apprehensive, if he got ashore, he should not be able to make his way back again. This circumstance really happened to our people who had landed with Mr. Gore; for the communication between them and the ships, by our own boats, was quickly stopped. They made a signal, in the evening, for the boats, which were accordingly sent; and in a short time afterwards returned with some good salt and a few yams. A considerable quantity of both these articles had been obtained in the course of the day; but the surf was so exceedingly high, that the greatest part of both had been lost in bringing them off to the boats. The officer and twenty men, not venturing to run the risk of coming off, remained all night on shore; by which unfortunate circumstance, the very thing happened which Captain Cook, as we have already related, so eagerly wished to prevent, and imagined he had effectually guarded against.

The violence of the surf did not deter the natives from coming off in canoes to our ships. They brought with them some refreshments, for which we gave them, in exchange, some nails, and

and pieces of iron hoops; and we distributed among the women in the canoes, many pieces of ribbon, and some buttons, as bracelets. Some of the men had representations of human figures punctured upon their breasts, and one of them had a lizard represented. These visitants acquainted us, that there was no chief of this island, but that it was subject to one of the chiefs of Atooi, whose name was Tencooneoo. Among other articles which they now brought off to us, was a small drum, that had a great resemblance to those of Otaheite.

Between ten and eleven o'clock at night, the wind became southerly, and the sky seemed to indicate an approaching storm. In consequence of these threatening appearances, Captain Cook, thinking that we were rather too near the shore, caused the anchors to be taken up; and the ships being carried into forty-two fathoms water, came to again in that more secure station. This however proved an unnecessary precaution; for the wind, not long after veering to north-north-east, blew a fresh gale, with squalls, and violent showers of rain. This weather continued for the whole succeeding day, during which the sea ran so high, that all communication with our party on shore was totally intercepted, and the islanders themselves would not venture out to the ships in their canoes. Towards the evening, the Commodore sent the Master in a boat to the south-east point  
of



of the island, to try whether he could land in that quarter. He returned with a favourable report; but it was now too late to send for our party till the following morning: so that they were obliged to stay another night on shore. On the appearance of day-light, a boat was dispatched to the south-east point, with orders to Lieutenant Gore, that, if he could not embark his people from the spot where they at present were, he should march them up to the point. The boat being prevented from getting to the beach, one of the crew swam to shore, and communicated the instructions. After the boat had returned, Captain Cook went himself with the launch and pinace up to the point, in order to bring off our party from the land. He took with him three goats, one of them a male, and the others female; a young boar and sow of the English breed: and also the seeds of onions, pumpkins, and melons. He landed with great ease, under the west side of the point, where he found his party, in company with some of the natives. To one of these, who assumed some degree of authority over the rest, he gave the goats, pigs, and seeds. He intended to have left these useful presents at Atooi, if we had not been so unexpectedly driven from that island.

While our people were employed in filling some water-casks, from a little stream which the late rains had occasioned, Captain Cook made a  
short

short excursion into the country, accompanied by the islander above-mentioned, and followed by two others who carried the two pigs. When they had arrived upon a rising ground, the Captain stopped to look around him, and immediately observed a woman, on the opposite side of the valley in which he had landed, calling out to her countrymen who attended him. Upon this the man who acted as chief began to mutter something, as if he was praying; and the two bearers of the pigs continued walking round the Captain all the time, making about a dozen circuits before the other had made an end of his oraison. This strange ceremony being performed, they proceeded on their walk, and met people coming from all quarters, who, upon being called to by the Captain's attendants, fell prostrate on their faces, till he was out of sight. The ground over which he passed, though it was uncultivated and very stony, was covered with plants and shrubs, some of which perfumed the air with the most delicious fragrance.

Our party who had been detained so long on shore, found, in those parts of the island which they had traversed, several salt ponds, some of which had a small quantity of water remaining, but others had none. They saw no appearance of a running stream; and though, in some small wells which they met with, the fresh water was pretty good, it seemed to be scarce. The houses  
of

of the natives were thinly scattered about ; and it was supposed, that there were not more than five hundred persons in the whole island. The method of living among these people was decent and cleanly. No instance was observed of the men and women eating together ; and the latter seemed in general to be associated in companies by themselves. The oily nuts of the *dooe dooe* are burned by these islanders for lights during the night ; and they dress their hogs by baking them in ovens, splitting the carcases through the whole length. Our people met with a sufficient proof of the existence of the *taboo* among them ; for one woman was employed in feeding another who was under that interdiction. Several other mysterious ceremonies were also observed ; one of which was performed by a woman, who threw a pig into the surf, and drowned it, and then tied up a bundle of wood, which she disposed of in the like manner. The same female, at another time, beat a man's shoulders with a stick, after he had seated himself for that purpose. An extraordinary veneration seemed to be paid here to owls, which they keep very tame. It appeared to be a pretty general practice among them, to pull out one of their teeth ; and when they were asked the reason of this remarkable custom, the only answer they gave was, that it was *teeba* ; which was also the reason assigned by them for giving a lock of their hair.

After

After our water-casks had been filled, and some roots, salt, and salted fish, had been purchased from the natives, Captain Cook returned on board with all his people, intending to make another visit to the island the next day. But, about seven in the evening, the anchor of the Resolution started, so that she drove off the bank. By this accident, we found ourselves, at day-break the next morning, which was the 2d of February, nine miles to the leeward of our last station; and the Captain foreseeing that it would require more time to regain it than he chose to employ, made the signal for the Discovery to weigh anchor and join us. This junction was effected about noon; and both ships immediately directed their course to the northward, in prosecution of their voyage. Thus, after we had spent more time in the neighbourhood of these islands than was necessary to have answered all our purposes, we were obliged to quit them before we had completed our stock of water, or procured from them such a plentiful supply of refreshments as the natives were both able and willing to have furnished us with. Our ship, however, obtained from them provisions that lasted at least three weeks; and Captain Clerke, more fortunate than we were, acquired such a quantity of vegetables as sufficed the Discovery's people upwards of two months.

The observations which Captain Cook was enabled to make on these islands, combined with those

those of Mr. Anderfon, whose abilities and assiduity rendered him a very useful assistant on such occasions, will supply materials for the following chapter.

---

## C H A P. XII.

*Situation of the Islands now discovered by us—The Name of Sandwich Islands given to the whole Group—Atooi particularly described—Its Soil—Climate—Vegetable Produce—Birds—Fishes—Domestic Animals—The Persons and Disposition of the Natives—Estimate of their Number—Their Drefs and Ornaments—Houses—Food—Mode of Cookery—Diversions—Musical Instruments—Manufactures—Tools—Their Acquaintance with Iron accounted for—Their Canoes described—Agriculture—Account of one of their Chiefs, who visited Captain Clerke — Their Weapons — Affinity between their Manners and those of the Society and Friendly Islanders—Their Language—Advantageous Situation of the Sandwich Isles.*

THE islands in the Pacific Ocean, which have been discovered in the course of our late voyages, have been generally found situate in groups; the single intermediate isles, hitherto met

met with, being few in proportion to the rest; though in all probability there are many more of them yet unknown, which serve as gradations or steps between the several clusters. Of what number this new-discovered Archipelago is composed, must be left to the decision of future navigators. We observed five of them, whose names are Woahoo, Atooi, Oneeheow, Oreehoua, and Tahoorā. The last of these is a small elevated island, at the distance of four or five leagues from the south-east point of Oneeheow. We were informed, that it abounds with birds, which are its sole inhabitants. We also gained some intelligence with regard to the existence of a low uninhabited island in the neighbourhood, named Tammata-pappa. Besides these six, we were told that there were some other islands both to the eastward and westward. Captain Cook distinguished the whole group by the name of the Sandwich Islands, in honour of the Earl of Sandwich. Those which he saw are situated between the latitude of  $21^{\circ} 30'$ , and  $22^{\circ} 15'$  north, and between the longitude of  $199^{\circ} 20'$ , and  $201^{\circ} 30'$ , east.

With respect to Woahoo, the most easterly of these islands, seen by us, we could get no other information, but that it is high land, and is inhabited.

Oneeheow, concerning which some particulars have been already mentioned, lies seven leagues to the westward of our anchoring-place at Atooi,

and does not exceed fifteen leagues in circumference. Yams are its principal vegetable production. We procured some salt here, called by the natives *patai*, which is produced in salt ponds. With it they cure both fish and pork; and some salt fish, which we purchased from them, were extremely good, and kept very well. This island is chiefly low land, except the part opposite Atooi, which rises immediately from the sea to a considerable height; as does also its south-east point, which terminates in a round hill.

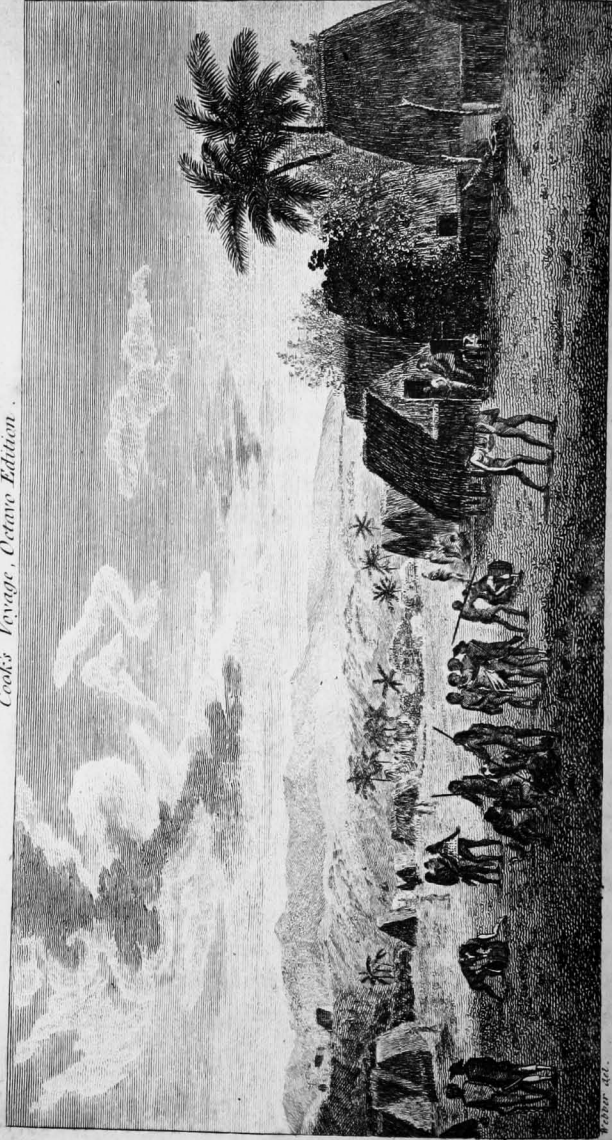
Of Oreehoua we know no other particulars than that it is an elevated island, of small extent, lying close to the north side of Onecheow.

Atooi, which is the largest of those we saw, being the principal scene of our operations, we shall now proceed to lay before our readers such information as we were able to collect concerning it. From what we observed of it, it is at least ten leagues in length from east to west; from whence its circumference may nearly be guessed, though it appears to be much broader at the east than at the west point. The road, or anchoring-place, which our vessels occupied, is on the south-west side of the island, about two leagues from the west end, before a village name Wymoa. As far as we sounded, we found the bank free from rocks; except to the eastward of the village, where there projects a shoal, on which are some rocks and breakers. This road is somewhat ex-  
posed





*Cook's Voyage, Octavo Edition.*



*Feber del.*

*AN ISLAND VIEW IN ATOOI.*

posed to the trade wind; notwithstanding which defect, it is far from being a bad station, and greatly superior to those which necessity continually obliges ships to use, in countries where the winds are not only more variable, but more boisterous; as at Madeira, Teneriffe, the Azores, &c. The landing too is not so difficult as at most of those places; and, unless in very bad weather, is always practicable. The water in the neighbourhood is excellent, and may be conveyed with ease to the boats. But no wood can be cut at any convenient distance, unless the islanders could be prevailed upon to part with the few *etooa* trees (for that is the name they give to the *cordia sebastina*) that grow about their villages, or a species called *dooc dooc*, which grows farther up the country.

The land does not in the least resemble, in its general appearance, any of the islands we have visited within the tropic of Capricorn; if we except its hills near the centre, which are high, but slope gradually towards the sea, or lower lands. Though it presents not to the view the delightful borders of Otaheite, or the luxuriant plains of Tongataboo, covered with trees, which at once afford a shelter from the scorching rays of the sun, a beautiful prospect to the eye, and food for the natives; yet its possessing a greater portion of gently-rising land, renders it, in some degree, superior to the above-mentioned favourite islands,

as being more capable of improvement. The height of the land within, and the number of clouds which we saw, during the whole time of our continuance, hanging over it, and not unfrequently on the other parts, seem to indicate that there is a sufficient supply of water, and that there are some running streams which we had not an opportunity of seeing, particularly in the deep vallies, at the entrance of which the villages are in general situated. The ground, from the wooded part to the sea, is covered with an excellent kind of grafs, about two feet in height, which sometimes grows in tufts, and appeared capable of being converted into abundant crops of fine hay. But on this extensive space not even a shrub grows naturally.

In the narrow valley leading to the *morai*, the soil is of a dark-brown colour, rather loose; but on the high ground, it is of a reddish brown, more stiff and clayey. It is probably the same all over the cultivated parts; for what adhered to most of the potatoes that we purchased, which doubtless came from very different spots, was of this sort. Its quality, however, may be better estimated from its productions, than from its appearance: for the vale, or moist ground, produces *taro*, much larger than any we had ever seen; and the more elevated ground furnishes sweet potatoes, that seldom weigh less than two

or three pounds, and frequently weigh ten, and sometimes a dozen or fourteen pounds.

Were we to judge of the climate from our experience, it might be said to be very variable; for, according to the general opinion, it was at this time the season of the year when the weather is supposed to be most settled, the sun being at his greatest annual distance. The heat was now very moderate; and few of those inconveniences to which many countries lying within the tropics are subject, either from heat or moisture, seem to be experienced here. Nor did we find any dews of consequence; a circumstance which may partly be accounted for, by the lower part of the country being destitute of trees.

The rock that constitutes the sides of the valley, is a dark-grey ponderous stone; but honey-combed, with some spots of a rusty colour, and some very minute shining particles interspersed. It is of an immense depth, and seems to be divided into *strata*, though nothing is interposed; for the large pieces always broke off to a determinate thickness, and did not appear to have adhered to those that were below them. Other stones are, in all probability, much more various than in the southern islands. For during the short time we remained here, besides the *lapis hydius*, we found a species of cream-coloured whetstone, sometimes variegated with whiter or blacker veins, like marble; and common writing slate, as well

as some of a coarser sort; and the natives brought us some pieces of a coarse whitish pumice stone. We also procured a brown sort of *hematites*, which, from its being strongly attracted by the magnet, discovered the quantity of metal it contained. What we saw of this was cut artificially, as were also the slates and whetstones.

Besides the vegetables purchased by us as refreshments, among which were at least five or six varieties of plantains, the island produces bread-fruit; this however seems to be scarce, as we only saw one tree of that species. There are also a few cocoa-palms; some yams; the *kappe* of the Friendly Islands, or Virginian *arum*; the *etooa* tree, and odoriferous *gardenia*, or *cape jasmine*. We met with several trees of the *dooe dooe*, that bear the oily nuts, which are stuck upon a kind of skewer, and made use of as candles. Our people saw them used in the same manner at Oneeheow. We were not on shore at Atooi except in the day-time, and then we observed the islanders wearing these nuts, hung on strings round their necks. There is a species of *sida*, or Indian mallow; also the *morinda citrifolia*, which is here called *none*; a species of *convolvulus*; the *ava*, or intoxicating pepper, besides great quantities of gourds. These last grow to a very large size, and are of a remarkable variety of shapes, which are perhaps the effect of art. Upon the dry sand, about the village, grew a plant that had  
never

never been seen by us in this ocean, of the size of a common thistle, and prickly; but bearing a fine flower, greatly resembling a white poppy.

The scarlet birds which were brought for sale, were never met with alive; but we saw one small one, about the size of a canary bird, of a deep crimson colour. We also saw a large owl, two brown hawks or kites, and a wild duck. We heard from the natives the names of some other birds; among which were the *otoo*, or blueish heron, and the *torata*, a sort of whimbrel. It is probable that the species of birds are numerous, if we may judge by the quantity of fine yellow, green, and small, velvet-like, blackish feathers used upon the cloaks, and other ornaments, worn by these people.

Fish, and other productions of the sea were, to appearance, not various; as besides the small mackarel, we only saw common mullets; a species of a chalky colour; a small brownish rock-fish, adorned with blue spots; a turtle, which was penned up in a pond; and three or four sorts of fish salted. The few shell-fish seen by us were chiefly converted into ornaments, though they were destitute of the recommendation either of beauty or novelty.

The only tame or domestic animals that we found here were hogs, dogs, and fowls, which were all of the same kind that we met with at the islands of the South Pacific. There were also

small lizards ; and some rats, resembling those of every island which we had hitherto visited.

The inhabitants of Atooi are of the middle size, and in general stoutly made. They are neither remarkable for a beautiful shape, nor for striking features. Their visage, particularly that of the women, is sometimes round, but others have it long ; nor can it be justly said, that they are distinguished as a nation by any general cast of countenance. Their complexion is nearly of a nut-brown ; but some individuals are of a darker hue. We have already mentioned the women as being little more delicate than the men in their formation ; and we may add that, with few exceptions, they have little claim to those peculiarities that distinguish the sex in most other parts of the world. There is indeed a very remarkable equality in the size, colour, and figure of the natives of both sexes : upon the whole, however, they are far from being ugly, and have, to all appearance, few natural deformities of any kind. Their skin is not very soft, nor shining ; but their eyes and teeth are for the most part pretty good. Their hair in general is straight ; and though its natural colour is usually black, they stain it as at the Friendly and other islands. We perceived but few instances of corpulence, and these more frequently among the women than the men ; but it was principally among the latter that personal defects were observed ; though if any of them can  
lay

by claim to a share of beauty, it appeared to be most conspicuous amongst the young men.

They are active, vigorous, and most expert swimmers ; leaving their canoes upon the most frivolous occasion, diving under them, and swimming to others, though at a considerable distance. We have frequently seen women, with infants at the breast, when the surf was so high as to prevent their landing in the canoes, leap overboard, and swim to the shore, without endangering their little ones.

They appear to be of a frank, cheerful disposition ; and are equally free from the fickle levity which characterizes the inhabitants of Otaheite, and the sedate cast which is observable among many of those of Tongataboo. They seem to cultivate a sociable intercourse with each other ; and, except the propensity to thieving, which is, as it were, innate in most of the people we have visited in these seas, they were extremely friendly to us. And it does no small credit to their sensibility, without flattering ourselves, that when they saw the different articles of our European manufacture, they could not refrain from expressing their astonishment, by a mixture of joy and concern, that seemed to apply the case as a lesson of humility to themselves ; and on every occasion they appeared to have a proper consciousness of their own inferiority ; a behaviour that equally exempts their national character from the ridiculous



ious pride of the more polished Japanese, and of the ruder native of Greenland. It was pleasing to observe with what affection the women managed their infants, and with what alacrity the men contributed their assistance in such a tender office; thus distinguishing themselves from those savages, who consider a wife and child as things rather necessary than desirable, or worthy of their regard and esteem.

From the numbers that we saw assembled at every village, as we coasted along, it may be conjectured that the inhabitants of this island are pretty numerous. Including the straggling houses, there might perhaps be in the whole island, sixty such villages as that near which our ships anchored; and if we allow five persons to each house, there would be in every village, five hundred; or thirty thousand upon the island. This number is by no means exaggerated, for there were sometimes three thousand people, at least, collected upon the beach, when it could not be supposed that above a tenth part of the natives were present.

The ordinary dress of both sexes has been already described. The women have often much larger pieces of cloth wrapped about them, extending from just below the breasts to the hams, and sometimes lower; and several were observed with pieces thrown loosely over their shoulders, which covered the greatest part of the body; but  
the

the children, when very young, are entirely naked. They wear nothing upon the head; but the hair both of men and women is cut in various forms; and the general fashion, particularly among the latter, is to have it short behind, and long before. The men frequently had it cut on each side in such a manner, that the remaining part somewhat resembled the crest of their caps or helmets before mentioned. Both sexes however seemed to be very careless about their hair, and had no combs, nor any thing of the kind to dress it with. The men sometimes twist it into a number of separate parcels, like the tails of a wig, each about as thick as a finger; though most of these, which are so long as to reach far down the back, are artificially fixed upon the head, over their own hair.

Contrary to the general practice of most of the islands of the Pacific Ocean, the people of the Sandwich Isles have not their ears perforated, nor do they wear any ornaments in them. Both men and women, however, adorn themselves with necklaces composed of bunches of small black cord, like our hat-string, often above a hundred-fold; entirely resembling those we saw worn at Wateoo, except that instead of the two little balls on the middle before, they fix a small piece of wood, stone, or shell, about two inches in length, with a broad hook, well polished. They have also necklaces of many strings of very small shells, or of the dried flowers of the Indian mallow; and they

they sometimes hang round their necks a small human figure of bone, about the length of three inches. The women likewise wear bracelets of a single shell, pieces of black wood, with bits of ivory interspersed, and neatly polished, fastened together by a string drawn closely through them; or others of hogs' teeth, placed parallel to each other, with the concave part outward, and the points cut off; some of which, formed only of large boars' tusks, are very elegant. The men sometimes fix on their heads plumes of feathers of the tropic-bird; or those of cocks, fastened round neat polished sticks, two feet in length; and for the same purpose, they sew the skin of a white dog's tail over a stick, with its tuft at the end. They also, not unfrequently, wear on the head a kind of ornament, of the thickness of a finger, or more, covered with yellow and red feathers, curiously varied, and tied behind; and on that part of the arm which is above the elbow, a sort of broad shell-work, grounded upon net-work.

The men sometimes puncture themselves upon their hands or arms, and near the groin; but frequently we saw no marks at all; though a few individuals had more of this species of ornament than we had usually seen at other places, and curiously executed in a great variety of lines and figures, on the arms and fore-part of the body. Contrary to the custom of the Friendly and Society Islands, they do not slit, or cut off, any part of the  
*prepuce;*

*prepuce*; but have it univerfally drawn over the *glans*, and tied with a ftring.

There is no appearance of defence, or fortification, near any of their villages, and the houfes are fattered about, without the leaft order. Some of thefe habitations are large and commodious, from forty to fifty feet in length, and twenty or thirty in breadth; while others of them are contemptible hovels. Their figure refembles that of hay-ftacks; or, perhaps, a better idea may be conceived of them, by fuppoſing the roof of a barn placed on the ground, in fuch a manner as to form a high acute ridge, with two low fides. The gable at each end correſponding to the fides, makes thefe dwelling-places cloſe all round; and they are well thatched with long grafs, which is laid on flender poles. The entrance is made either in the end or fide, and is an oblong hole, extremely low; it is often ſhut up by a board of planks, faſtened together, which ſerves as a door; but, as it has no hinges, muſt be removed occaſionally. No light enters the houſe except by this opening; and though ſuch cloſe habitations may be comfortable places of retreat in bad weather, they ſeem but ill adapted to the warm climate of this country. They are kept remarkably clean, and the floors are ſtrewed with dried grafs, over which mats are ſpread to fit and ſleep on. At one end ſtands a bench, about three feet high, on which the domeſtic utenſils are placed. Theſe  
confiſt

consist of gourd-shells, which the natives convert into vessels that serve as bottles to hold water, and as baskets to contain their food, and other things; and also of a few wooden bowls and trenchers of various sizes.

From what we saw growing, and from what was brought to market, we have no doubt that sweet potatoes, *taro*, and plantains, constitute the principal part of their vegetable diet; and that yams and bread-fruit are rather to be considered as rarities. Of animal food, they appear to be in no want; as they have great numbers of hogs, which run without restraint about the houses; and if they eat dogs, which is not altogether improbable, their stock of these seemed very considerable. The quantities of fishing-hooks found among them, indicate that they procure a tolerable supply of animal food from the sea. They have a custom of salting fish, and likewise pork, which they preserve in gourd-shells. The salt which they use for this purpose is of a reddish colour, but not very coarse, and seems to be nearly the same with what our stragglers found at Christmas Island. Its colour is, doubtless, derived from a mixture of mud at the bottom of the pond where it is formed; for some of it which had adhered in lumps, was of a tolerable whiteness.

They bake their vegetable articles of food with heated stones; and from the great quantity which we saw dressed at one time, we imagined that  
all

all the inhabitants of a village, or at least a considerable number of people, joined in the use of a common oven. We did not perceive them dress any animal food at this island; but Mr. Gore's party, as has been already mentioned, observed that it was dressed at Oneecheow in the same kind of ovens, which makes it highly probable that this is also the practice in Atooi; particularly as we met with no utensil there that could serve the purpose of boiling or stewing. The only artificial dish we saw, was a *taro* pudding; which, though very sour, was devoured with avidity by the natives. They eat off a sort of wooden trenchers; and, as far as we were enabled to judge from one instance, the women, if restrained from feeding at the same dish with the men, as is the custom at Otaheite, are at least allowed to eat in the same place near them.

The amusements of these people are various. We did not see the dances at which they use the feathered cloaks and caps; but from the motions which they made with their hands, on other occasions, when they sung, we judged that they were somewhat similar to those we had met with at the southern islands, though not so skilfully performed. They had not among them either flutes or reeds; and the only two musical instruments, seen by us, were of an extremely rude kind. One of them does not produce a melody superior to that of a child's rattle. It consists of what may be denominated a conic cap inverted,  
but

but very little hollowed at the base, made of a sedge-like plant: the upper part of which, and likewise the edges, are embellished with beautiful red feathers; and to the point, or lower part, is fixed a gourd-shell. Into this they put something to rattle, which is done by holding the instrument by the small part, and shaking it briskly before the face, at the same time striking the breast with the other hand. The other instrument was a hollow vessel of wood, not unlike a platter, combined with the use of two sticks, on which one of our gentlemen observed a man performing. He held one of the sticks, about two feet in length, with one hand, in the same manner as we hold a violin, and struck it with the other, which was smaller, and resembled a drum-stick, in a quicker or slower measure; beating with his foot at the same time upon the hollow vessel, that lay upon the ground inverted, and thus produced a tune that was not disagreeable. This music was accompanied by the vocal performance of some women, whose song had a pleasing effect.

They had great numbers of small polished rods, of the length of between four and five feet, rather thicker than the rammer of a musquet, with a tuft of long white dog's hair fixed on the small end. These they probably make use of in their diversions. We saw a native take one of them in his hand, and holding it up, give a smart

smart stroke, till it was brought into an horizontal position, striking the ground with his foot, on the same side, and beating his breast with his other hand. They play at bowls with pieces of the whetstone above-mentioned, shaped somewhat like a small cheese, but rounded at the edges and sides, which are very neatly polished. They have other bowls made of a reddish-brown clay, glazed over with a composition of the same colour, or of a coarse dark-grey slate. They also use, as quoits, small flat roundish pieces of the writing-slate, scarcely a quarter of an inch thick.

In the different manufactures of these people, there appears to be an extraordinary degree of ingenuity and neatness. Their cloth is made from the *morus papyrifera*, and doubtless in the same manner as at Tongataboo and Otaheite; for we bought some of the grooved sticks with which they beat it. Its texture, however, though thicker, is inferior to that of the cloth of either of the places just mentioned; but in colouring or staining it, the inhabitants of Atooi display a superiority of taste by the infinite variety of figures which they execute. Their colours indeed, are not very bright, except the red; but the regularity of the figures and stripes is amazing; for, as far as we know, they have nothing like stamps or prints to make the impressions. We had no opportunity of learning in what manner they produce their colours; but, besides the variegated sorts, they



have some pieces of plain white cloth, and others of a single colour, particularly light-blue, and dark-brown. In general, the pieces brought to us were about the breadth of two feet, and four or five yards in length, being the form and quantity made use of by them for their common drefs, or *mara*; and even some of these were composed of pieces sewed together. They have also a particular sort that is thin, and greatly resembles oil-cloth; and which is either oiled, or soaked in some kind of varnish. They fabricate numbers of white mats, which are strong, with many red stripes, rhombuses, and other figures interwoven on one side. These, in all probability, occasionally make a part of their drefs; for, when they offered them to sale, they put them on their backs. They manufacture others of a coarser sort, plain and strong, which they spread over their floors to sleep upon.

They stain their gourd-shells neatly with undulated lines, triangles, and other figures of a black colour. They also seem to be acquainted with the art of varnishing; for some of these stained gourd-shells are covered with a sort of lacker; and, on other occasions, they make use of a strong size, or glutinous substance, to fasten things together. Their wooden dishes and bowls, out of which they drink their *ava*, are of the *elooa* tree, or *cordia*, extremely neat and well polished.

They

They likewise make small square fans of mat or wicker-work, with handles of the same, or of wood, tapering from them, which are curiously wrought with small cords of hair, and cocoa-nut fibres intermixed. Their fishing-hooks are ingeniously made; some of bone, many of pearl-shell, and others of wood, pointed with bone. The bones are for the most part small, and consist of two pieces; and the various sorts have a barb, either on the inside like ours, or on the outside; but others have both, the exterior one being farthest from the point. Of the latter sort, one was procured nine inches in length, made of a single piece of bone; the elegant form and polish of which could not be exceeded by any European artist. They polish their stones by constant friction, with pumice-stone in water; and such of their tools as we saw, resembled those of the southern islanders. Their hatchets, or rather adzes, were exactly of the same pattern, and were either formed of a blackish stone, or of a clay-coloured one. They have also small instruments composed of a single shark's tooth, some of which are fixed to the fore-part of the jaw-bone of a dog, and others to a thin wooden handle of a similar shape; and at the other end there is a bit of string fastened through a little hole. They serve occasionally as knives, and are probably used in carving.

The only iron-tools seen among them, and which they possessed before our arrival, were a piece of iron-hoop, about the length of two inches, fitted into a wooden handle; and another edge-tool, which we supposed to have been made of the point of a broad sword. Their having the actual possession of these, and their being well acquainted with the use of this metal, inclined some of our people to imagine that we were not the first European visitors of these islands. But the very great surprize which they testified on seeing our ships, and their perfect ignorance of the use of fire-arms, cannot be reconciled with such an opinion. There are several means by which such people may obtain pieces of iron, or acquire the knowledge of the existence of that metal, without having had an immediate connection with those nations that use it. It can scarcely be doubted, that it was unknown to all the inhabitants of the Pacific Ocean, till Magellan led the way into it; for no navigator, immediately after his voyage, found any of this metal in their possession; though in the course of our late voyages, it has been remarked, that the use of it was known at several islands, which no former European vessel had ever, to our knowledge, visited. At all the places where Mendana touched, during his two voyages, some of it must have been left; and this would, doubtless, extend the knowledge of it to all the various islands with  
which

which the people whom he visited had any immediate intercourse. It might even have been carried farther; and where specimens of this valuable article could not be met with, descriptions might, in some degree, serve to make it known when afterwards seen. The next voyage to the southward of the equator, in which any intercourse was had with the people who inhabit the islands of this ocean, was that of Quiros, who landed at Sagittaria, the island of Handsome People, and at Tierra del Espiritu Santo: at all which places, as well as at those with which they had any communication, it must undoubtedly have been made known. To him succeeded in this navigation, Le Maire and Schouten, whose connections with the natives began much farther to the eastward, and terminated at Cocos and Horn islands. It is certain that the inhabitants of Otaheite and the Society Isles had a knowledge of iron, and purchased it with the greatest avidity when Captain Wallis discovered Otaheite; and they could only have acquired this knowledge through the mediation of those neighbouring islands at which it had been originally left. They acknowledge indeed, that this was really the case; and they have since informed us, that they held it in such estimation before the arrival of Captain Wallis, that an Otaheitean chief, who had gained possession of two nails, received no small emolument, by letting out the use of them

to his neighbours, for the purpose of boring holes. The natives of the Society Islands, whom we found at Watecoo, had been driven to that place long after the knowledge and use of iron had been thus introduced among their countrymen; and though perhaps they had no specimen of it with them, they would naturally communicate at that island, by description, their knowledge of this useful metal. From the people of Watecoo, again, those of Hervey's Island might derive that inclination for it, of which we had sufficient proofs during our short intercourse with them.

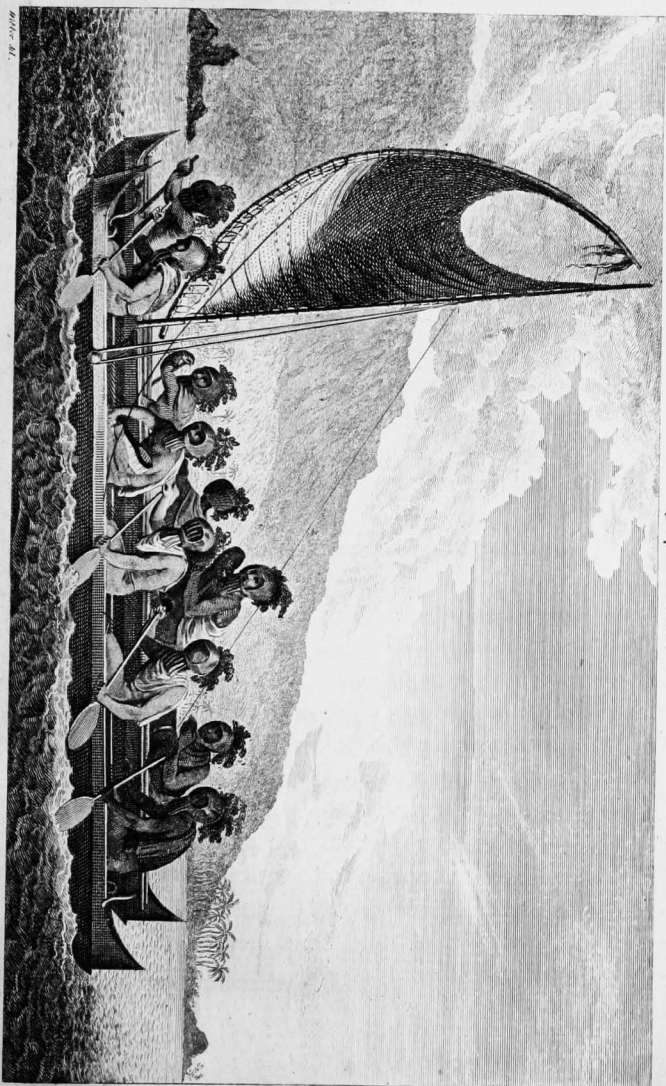
The consideration of these facts, will shew how the knowledge of iron has been conveyed throughout the Pacific Ocean, to islands which have never had an immediate connection with Europeans; and it may easily be imagined, that wherever the history of it only has been reported, or a very inconsiderable quantity of it has been left, the greater eagerness will be shewn by the inhabitants to procure plentiful supplies of it. The application of these particulars to the object of our present consideration is manifest. The natives of Atooi and Oneehcow, without having ever been visited by Europeans before us, might have received this metal from intermediate islands, situated between them and the Ladrões, which the Spaniards have frequented almost ever since the period of Magellan's voyage. Or, if the  
distant

distant western position of the Ladrões should detract from the probability of this solution, is there not the American continent to windward, where the Spaniards have been settled for upwards of two centuries and a half; during which long space of time, shipwrecks must frequently have happened on its coasts? It cannot be deemed surprizing, that part of such wrecks, containing iron, should by the easterly trade-winds, be occasionally cast upon some of those islands which are dispersed about this immense ocean. The distance of Atooi from America, is no argument against this supposition; and even if it were, it would not destroy it. This ocean is annually traversed by Spanish vessels; and it is highly probable, that besides the accident of losing a mast and its appendages, casks with iron-hoops, and many other things that contain iron, may fall or be thrown overboard during so long a passage, and thus find their way to land. These are not mere conjectures; for one of Captain Cook's people actually saw some wood in a house at Wymoa, which he supposed to be fir; it was worm-eaten, and the natives informed him, that it had been driven ashore by the waves; and we had their own express testimony, that they had obtained from some place to the eastward, the specimens of iron found among them.

From this digression, (if it can justly be called so) let us return to the observations made during our continuance at Atooi. The canoes of these people are commonly about four-and-twenty feet in length, and have the bottom in general formed of a single piece of wood, hollowed out to the thickness of an inch or more, and brought to a point at each end. The sides are composed of three boards, each about an inch thick, neatly fitted and lashed to the bottom. The extremities both at head and stern are a little elevated, and both are made sharp, somewhat resembling a wedge, but they flatten more abruptly, so that the two side-boards join each other side by side for upwards of a foot. As they seldom exceed a foot and a half in breadth, those that go single (for they sometimes join them) have out-riggers, which are shaped and fitted with more judgment than any we had before seen. They are rowed by paddles, such as we had generally observed at other islands; and some of them have a light triangular sail extended to a mast and boom. The ropes which they use for their boats, and the smaller cords for their fishing-tackle, are strong and neatly made.

They are by no means novices in the art of agriculture. The vale-ground is one continued plantation of *taro*, and some other articles, which have all the appearance of being carefully attended to. The potatoe-fields, and spots of sugar-

*Cook's Ténia Vahine.*



*W. H. M.*





sugar-cane, or plantains, on the higher grounds, are planted with great regularity ; but neither these, nor the others, are inclosed with any fence, unless we consider the ditches in the low grounds as such ; which, it is more probable, are designed to convey water to the *taro*. The great quantity and excellence of these articles may perhaps be as much owing to skilful culture as natural fertility of soil, which seems better adapted to them than to bread-fruit and cocoa-nut trees ; the few we saw of these latter not being in a thriving state. Notwithstanding this skill in agriculture, the island, from its general appearance, seemed to be capable of more extensive improvement, and of maintaining thrice as many inhabitants as are now upon it ; for the greater part of it, that now lies waste, was apparently as good a soil as those parts that are cultivated. It must therefore be inferred, that these people do not increase in that proportion, which would render it necessary for them to take advantage of the extent of their island, toward raising a greater quantity of its vegetable productions for their maintenance.

Though Captain Cook did not see a chief of any note, there were however several, as the islanders informed us, who reside at Atooi, and to whom they prostrate themselves as a mark of homage and respect. This prostration seems equivalent to the *moe moea*, paid to the chiefs of the Friendly Islands, and is here denominated  
*bamoca*,

*bamoea*, or *moe*. Whether they were at first afraid to shew themselves, or happened to be absent, we cannot determine ; but, after the Resolution had left the island, one of these great men made his appearance, and visited Captain Clerke on board the Discovery ; he came off in a double canoe ; and, like the sovereign of the Friendly Isles, paid no regard to the small canoes that chanced to be in his way, but ran against, or over them, without making the least attempt to avoid them. And it was impossible for these poor people to avoid him, for they could not then manage their canoes, it being a necessary mark of their submission that they should lie down till he had passed. His attendants assisted him in getting on board the ship, and placed him in the gang-way, where they stood round him, holding each other by the hands ; nor would they suffer any one to approach him but Captain Clerke himself. He was a young man, apparelled from head to foot, and was accompanied by a young woman, who was perhaps his wife. His name was said to be Tamahano. Captain Clerke having made him some presents, received from him, in return, a large bowl, supported by two figures of men, the carving of which displayed some degree of skill, both with respect to the design and the execution. This bowl used to be filled with the *kava*, or *ava* (as it is termed at Oraheite), which liquor is prepared and drank here as at  
the

the other islands of the Pacific Ocean. Captain Clerke could not prevail upon this chief to go below, nor to move from the spot where his attendants had first placed him. After remaining some time in the ship, he was carried back into his canoe, and returned to the island. The following day several messages were sent to Captain Clerke, inviting him to return the visit on shore, and giving him to understand that the chief had prepared a considerable present for the occasion; but the Captain being anxious to get out to sea, and join the Resolution, did not think proper to accept of the invitation.

The short and imperfect intercourse we had with the natives did not enable us to form any accurate judgment of the form of government established amongst them; but, from the general similarity of customs, and particularly from what we observed of the honours paid to their chiefs, it seems reasonable to imagine that it is of the same nature with that which prevails in all the islands we had hitherto visited; and, in all probability their wars among themselves are equally frequent. This, indeed, might be inferred from the number of weapons which we found in their possession, and from the excellent order in which they kept them. But we had proofs of the fact from their own confession; and, as we were informed, these wars are carried on between the different districts of their own island, as well as between  
between

between it and the neighbouring inhabitants of the isles of Oneeheow and Oreehoua. We scarcely need assign any other cause besides this to account for the appearance, before-mentioned, of their population not being proportioned to the extent of their ground that is capable of cultivation.

Besides their spears, formed of a fine brownish wood, beautifully polished, some of which are barbed at one end, and flattened to a point at the other, they have a kind of weapon which we had never met with before. It somewhat resembles a dagger, and is in general about eighteen inches in length; sharpened at one or both ends, and secured to the hand by a string. Its use is to stab in close combat, and it seems well adapted to that purpose. Some of these may be denominated double daggers, having a handle in the middle, with which they are the better enabled to strike different ways. They have likewise bows and arrows; but, both from their slender construction and their apparent scarcity, it is probable that they never make use of them in battle. The knife or saw, already mentioned, with which they dissect the dead bodies of their enemies, may also be ranked among their weapons, as they both strike and cut with it when engaged in close fight. It is a small flat wooden instrument, about a foot in length, of an oblong shape, rounded at the corners; its edges are sur-  
rounded

rounded with sharks' teeth strongly fixed to it, and pointing outwards; and it has generally a hole in the handle, through which passes a long string, which they wrap several times round the wrist. We also conjectured, that they use slings on some occasions; for we procured some pieces of the *hæmatites*, or blood-stone, artificially made of an oval form, longitudinally divided, with a narrow groove in the middle of the convex part. To this, the person who had one of them, applied a thin cord, but would not dispose of it, though he was not unwilling to part with the stone, which, as it weighed a pound, must prove fatal when thrown with some degree of force. We likewise saw some pieces of whetstone, neatly polished, of an oval figure, but somewhat pointed towards each end; nearly resembling in shape some stones seen by Captain Cook at New Caledonia in 1774, and made use of there in slings.

As some of their religious institutions, and their method of disposing of their dead, strongly indicate an affinity between the manners of these people and of the natives of the Friendly and Society Islands, we will mention a few particulars that will serve to place this in a striking point of view. The inhabitants of Tongataboo bury their dead with great decency, and they also inter their human sacrifices; but they do not, to our knowledge, offer any other animal, or even vegetable, to their deities. The Otaheiteans do  
not

not inter their dead, but expose them to waste by time and putrefaction, though they afterwards bury the bones; and, this being the case, it is remarkable, that they should inter the entire bodies of their human sacrifices. They also offer up to their gods other animals and vegetables; but are far from being attentive to the condition of the places where they celebrate those solemn rites; most of their *morais* being in a ruinous state, and shewing manifest tokens of neglect. The people of Atooi, again, bury both their common dead, and their human sacrifices, as at Tongataboo; but they resemble those of Otaheite in offering vegetables and animals to their gods, and in the neglected state of their religious places.

The *taboo* also prevails in Atooi in its full extent, and apparently with greater strictness than even at Tongataboo. For the natives here always asked, with great eagerness, and with indications of a fear of offending, whether any particular thing, which they desired to see, or we were unwilling to shew, was *taboo*, or (as they pronounced the word) *tafoo*? The *mai raä*, or prohibited articles at the Society Islands, though undoubtedly the same thing, did not appear to be so rigorously observed by them, except with regard to the dead; respecting whom we thought them more superstitious than any of the others were. These, however, are circumstances concerning which we cannot pretend to speak decisively;

fively; and we shall only observe, to shew the similitude in other points connected with religion, that the *tabounas*, or priests, seem to be as numerous here as at the other islands.

But whatever resemblance we might discover between the general manners of the inhabitants of Atooi and those of Otaheite, these were less striking than the similarity of language. Indeed, the languages of both places may be said to be almost entirely the same. The people of Atooi, in general, have neither the strong guttural pronunciation of the New-Zealanders, nor that smaller degree of it, which also distinguishes the Friendly Islanders; and they have not only adopted the soft mode of the Otaheiteans, in avoiding harsh sounds, but the whole idiom of their language; making use of the same affixes and suffixes to their words, and the same measure and cadence in their songs; at first hearing, indeed, a stranger may perceive some disagreement; but it should be considered, that the natives of Otaheite, from their frequent connections with the English, had learned, in some measure, to adapt themselves to our imperfect knowledge of their language, by using the most common and even corrupted expressions in conversation with us; whereas, when they talked with each other, and used the several parts necessary to propriety of speech, they were hardly at all understood by those among us, who had made the greatest progress  
in



in the knowledge of their vocabulary. A list of words was collected at Atooi, by the indefatigable Mr. Anderson, who embraced every opportunity of rendering our voyage useful to those who amuse themselves in tracing the emigrations of the various tribes that have peopled the globe, by the most convincing of all arguments, that drawn from the coincidence of language.

How widely has this nation diffused itself, in so many detached islands, so far distant from each other in every quarter of the Pacific Ocean! We find it, from New-Zealand, in the south, as far as the Sandwich Islands to the northward; and, in another direction, from Easter Island to the New Hebrides; that is, over an extent of sixty degrees of latitude, or three thousand six hundred miles north and south; and eighty-three degrees of longitude, or four thousand nine hundred and eighty miles east and west! How much farther, in either of those directions, its colonies reach, is not known; but, from what we are already acquainted with, we are authorized in pronouncing it to be the most extensive nation upon earth, though, perhaps, not the most numerous.

If the Sandwich Islands had been discovered at an early period by the Spaniards, they would doubtless have availed themselves of so excellent a situation, and have made use of Atooi, or some other of the islands, as a place of refreshment for the ships that sail annually between Manilla and Acapulco.

Acapulco. They lie almost midway between the last mentioned place and Guam, one of the Ladrões, which is at present their only port in traversing this vast ocean; and it would not have been a week's sail out of their ordinary route, to have touched at them. An acquaintance with the Sandwich Isles would also have been equally favourable to our Buccaneers; who have sometimes passed from the coast of America to the Ladrões, with a stock of provisions and water scarcely adequate to the support of life. Here they might always have met with a plentiful supply, and have been within a month's sail of the very part of California, which the Manilla ship is obliged to make. How happy would Lord Anson have been, and what difficulties would he have avoided, had he known that there was a cluster of islands, half way between America and Tinian, where all his wants might have been effectually relieved!

## C H A P. XIII.

*Observations on the Longitude, Tides, &c.—Proceed on the Voyage—Weather remarkably mild as far as the Latitude 44° North—Scarcity of Oceanic Birds in the Northern Hemisphere—Beautiful Sea-Animals described, supposed by Mr. Anderson to be a new species of Oniscus—See the Coast of North-America—Description of the Country—Difficulties at Cape Foulweather—Stormy and tempestuous Weather—Strictures on Martin d'Aguiar's River—Fallacy of Juan de Fuca's pretended Strait—An Inlet discovered—The Ships anchor there, and are visited by Numbers of the Natives—Their Behaviour.*

THE Discovery having joined us, we stood away to the northward, with a gentle gale from the east. The tides are so inconsiderable at the Sandwich Islands, that, with the great surf breaking against the shore, it was difficult, at all times, to know whether we had high or low water, or whether it ebbed or flowed. On the south side of Atooi, a current generally set to the westward, or north-westward. But, when we were at anchor off Oneeheow, we found a current setting nearly north-west and south-east, six hours each way. This was doubtless a regular tide, and the flood appeared to come from the north-west.

But,

But, to avoid digression, on Saturday the 7th of February, we were in the latitude of  $29^{\circ}$  north, and in the longitude of  $200^{\circ}$  east, the wind veering to south-east. We steered north-east and east till the 12th, when the wind had veered round to north-east, and east-north-east. We then tacked and stood to the northward, being in the latitude of  $30^{\circ}$  north, and in the longitude of  $206^{\circ} 15'$  east. In this advanced latitude, and even in the winter season, we had only begun to feel a sensation of cold in the mornings and evenings; a proof of the equal and durable influence of the heat of the sun, at all times, to  $30^{\circ}$  on each side the line. After that, the disproportion is known to become very great. This must be principally attributed to the direction of the sun's rays, independent of the bare distance, which is not equal to the effect. On Thursday the 19th of February, the wind veered to south-east, and we were again enabled to steer to the east, inclining a little to the north. On the 25th, we reached the latitude of  $42^{\circ} 30'$ , and the longitude of  $219^{\circ}$ ; when we began to meet with the rock-weed, mentioned in Lord Anson's voyage, by the name of sea-leek, which is generally seen by the Manilla ships. Sometimes a piece of wood appeared; but, if we had not known that we were near the continent of North America, we might have supposed, from the few signs of vicinity of land that we had seen, that we were not within some

thousand leagues of any. Since we left Sandwich Islands, we had hardly beheld a bird, or any other oceanic animal.

On the 1st of March, we had a calm day, which was succeeded by a wind from the north, with which we stood to the east, intending to make land. We ought to have been near it, according to the charts. Such moderate and mild weather appeared to us very extraordinary, when we were so far north, and so near an extensive continent, at this time of the year. The season must have been remarkably mild, for Sir Francis Drake met with very severe cold, about this latitude, even in the month of June\*. Viscaino, indeed, who was in the same part of the world, in the depth of winter, hardly takes notice of the cold, and mentions a ridge of snowy mountains, on this coast, as something extraordinary†.

It is a singular circumstance, that we should meet with so few birds, compared to those we saw in the same latitudes, to the south of the line. This must either proceed from a scarcity of them, or from a deficiency of resting-places. Hence it may be concluded, that, in the southern hemisphere, beyond 40°, the species are much more numerous, and the islands more plentifully scat-

\* See Sir Francis Drake's Voyage, in Campbell's Edition of Harris, vol. i. p. 18.

† Vaneegas's Hist. of California, vol. ii. p. 229.

tered,

tered, than any where near that latitude, between the coast of California and Japan.

On the morning of the 2d, during a calm, part of the sea appeared to be covered with a kind of slime, and some small sea animals were seen swimming about. Those which were most conspicuous, were of the gelatinous kind, almost globular; a smaller sort had a white or shining appearance, and were in great abundance. Some of the latter were put into a glass cup, with some salt water; and, when in a prone situation, they appeared like small scales or pieces of silver.

When they swam about, which they did with equal ease in various directions, they emitted the brightest colours of the most valuable gems, according to their position respecting the light. At one time they appeared pellucid, at another displaying the various tints of blue, from a saphirine to a violet, mixed with a kind of ruby, and glowing with sufficient strength to illuminate the glass and water. When the vessel was held to the strongest light, the tints appeared most vivid; but almost vanished when the animals subsided to the bottom, and they had then a brownish appearance. By candle-light, the colour, was principally, a beautiful pale green, with a kind of burnished gloss; and, in the dark, it faintly exhibited a glowing fire.

They are a new species of *oniscus*, and were called, by Mr. Anderson, *oniscus fulgens*; being

supposed to be an animal that contributes to that lucid appearance, often observed at sea, in the night. Two large birds settled, this day, on the water, near the ship. One was the *procellaria maxima*; and the other, of little more than half the magnitude of the former, appeared to be of the *albatross* kind. It was larger than a sea-gull, but resembled it in other respects. About noon, on the 6th, we beheld two seals, and several whales; and early the next morning, the long-expected coast of New Albion\* was seen, at the distance of ten or twelve leagues, extending from north-east to south-east. At noon, we were in the latitude of  $44^{\circ} 33'$  north, and in the longitude of  $235^{\circ} 20'$  east, and the land about eight leagues distant.

We had now seventy-three fathoms water, over a muddy bottom, and found ninety fathoms about a league farther off. The land, which was of a moderate height, appeared to be diversified with hills and vallies, and principally covered with wood. No very striking object, however, presented itself, except an high hill, with a flat summit, which bore east from us at noon. The land formed a point at the northern extreme, which Captain Cook named *Cape Foulweather*, from the exceeding bad weather we afterwards met with.

\* So named by Sir Francis Drake.

After

After variable light airs and calms, at eight o'clock in the evening of the 7th, a breeze sprung up at south-west. We stood to the north-west, under an easy sail, intending to range along the coast at day light. But, the next morning, at four, the wind having shifted to north-west, it blew in squalls, with rain. Till near ten o'clock our course was north-east; but, not being able to make any progress on this tack, and seeing nothing that had the appearance of an harbour, we tacked, and stood off south-west. Cape Foul-weather, at this time, bore north-east by north, distant about eight leagues.

In the evening of the 8th, the wind veered to the north-west, with squalls, hail, and sleet; and, the weather being hazy and thick, we stood out to sea till about noon the next day, when we stood in again for the land, which we saw at two in the afternoon, bearing east-north-east. In the evening, the wind veered more to the west, and the weather grew worse, which obliged us to tack and stand off till about four the next morning, when we stood in again. In the afternoon, at four, we discovered the land, which, at six, was about eight leagues distant. Here we tacked, and founded, but could not reach the ground with a line of one hundred and sixty fathoms. We stood off till near midnight, and then stood in again. At half past six, the next morning, we were about three leagues from the land. Seeing



nothing like a harbour, and the weather continuing unsettled, we tacked and stretched off south-west, having then fifty-five fathoms water.

The land which we approached, when we tacked, is moderately high, but, in many places, it rises still higher within. It is diversified with hills and rising grounds, many of which are covered with tall straight trees; and others, which were not so high, grew in spots, like clumps or coppices; but the spaces between, and the sides of the rising grounds, were clear.

Though, perhaps, as a summer prospect, this might be very agreeable, yet, at this season, it had an uncomfortable appearance, the bare grounds along the coast being covered with snow, which seemed to lie in abundance between the hills and rising grounds; and in many places, towards the sea, had, at a distance, the appearance of white cliffs. On the rising grounds, the snow was thinner spread; and farther inland, there seemed to be none at all. Hence it might, perhaps, be concluded, that the snow which we had seen towards the sea, had fallen the preceding night; which was, indeed, the coldest we had experienced since our arrival on that coast; and a kind of fleet sometimes fell.

The coast appeared almost straight in every part, not having any opening or inlet, and terminated in a kind of white sandy beach; though it was imagined by some on board, that such appearance

pearance was owing to the snow. Each extreme of the land shot out into a point; the northern one was that which we had seen on the 7th, and therefore Captain Cook called it *Cape Perpetua*. Its latitude is  $44^{\circ} 6'$  north, and its longitude  $235^{\circ} 52'$  east. The southern extreme the Commodore named *Cape Gregory*. It lies in the latitude of  $43^{\circ} 30'$ , and in the longitude of  $235^{\circ} 57'$  east. This point is rendered remarkable, by the land of it rising immediately from the sea, to a tolerable height, and that on each side of it is very low. We stood off till almost one in the afternoon, and then tacked and stood in, hoping, in the night, to have the wind off from the land. We were, however, mistaken, for, at five o'clock it veered to the west and south-west, which induced us once more to stand out to sea.

Cape Perpetua now bore north-east by north; and the farthest land to the south of Cape Gregory, bore south by east, distant about ten or twelve leagues. Its latitude will therefore be  $43^{\circ} 10'$ , and its longitude  $235^{\circ} 55'$  east. This is nearly the situation of Cape Blanco, discovered the 19th of January, 1603, by Martin d'Aguilar. It is remarkable that, in this very latitude, Geographers have placed a large entrance or strait, ascribing the discovery of it to the same navigator; whereas nothing more is mentioned in his voyage, than his having discovered a large river  
in

in this situation, which he would have entered, but was hindered by the currents.

The wind was now very unsettled, and blew in squalls, with snow showers. At midnight, it shifted to west-north-west, and presently increased to a very hard gale, with heavy squalls, and sleet, or snow. We had not a choice now, but were obliged to stretch to the southward, to get clear of the coast. This was done under more sail than the ships could bear with safety, but it was absolutely necessary to avoid the more imminent danger of being forced on shore. This gale abated at eight o'clock in the morning of the 13th, and then we stood in again for the land. The wind remained at west and north-west. Storms, breezes, and calms, alternately succeeded each other, till the morning of the 21st, when a breeze sprung up at south west. This being accompanied with fair weather, we steered north-easterly, hoping to fall in with the land, beyond where we had been tossed about for the preceding fortnight. In the evening, the wind shifted to the westward, and the next morning, about eight o'clock, we beheld the land at the distance of about nine leagues. Our latitude was now  $47^{\circ} 5'$  north, and our longitude  $235^{\circ} 10'$  east. We stood to the north, with a fine breeze, till near seven in the evening, when we tacked, in order to wait for day-light. We were now in forty-eight fathoms water, and four leagues from the land,

land, extending from north to south-east ; and a small round hill, which we supposed to be an island, bore north three quarters east, at the distance of about six or seven leagues. It seemed to be of a tolerable height, and could but just be seen from the deck.

There appeared to be a small opening between this supposed island, and the northern extreme of the land ; we therefore entertained some hopes of finding an harbour ; but these hopes gradually vanished as we grew nearer ; and, at length, we were almost convinced, that the opening was closed by low land. The Commodore, for this reason, named the point of land to the north of it, *Cape Flattery*. Its latitude is  $48^{\circ} 15'$  north, and its longitude  $235^{\circ} 3'$  east.

All the land upon this part of the coast, is of a pretty equal height, is principally covered with wood, and has a very fertile appearance. In this very latitude, Geographers have placed the pretended strait of Juan de Fuca. But nothing of that kind presented itself to our view, nor is it probable that any such thing ever existed. We stood to the southward till midnight, and then tacked, and, with a gentle breeze at south-west, steered to the north-west, intending, at day-light, to stand in for the land. But, before that time, we had a very hard gale, with rain, right on shore ; instead, therefore, of running in for the land, we endeavoured to get an offing, or, at least,

least, to preserve that which we had already got. The south-west wind, however, did not continue long, for it veered again to the west before night.

Thus were we perpetually encountering with strong west and north-west winds. In an evening, the wind would sometimes become moderate, and veer southward; but this was a certain prelude to a storm, which blew the hardest at south-south-east, and was generally accompanied with rain and sleet. In the course of six hours, it was usually succeeded by a gale from the north-west, which introduced fair weather. About nine o'clock in the morning, of Sunday the 29th, we again saw the land, the nearest part about six leagues distant. We were now in the latitude of  $49^{\circ} 29'$  north, and in the longitude of  $232^{\circ} 29'$  east.

The face of the country was very different from that of the parts which we had before seen; numbers of lofty mountains presented themselves to our view, whose summits were covered with snow. The vallies between them, and the land towards the coast, were covered with high straight trees, that appeared like a vast forest. A low point was formed, at the south-east extreme of the land, off which are several breakers, occasioned by some sunken rocks. It was therefore called *Point Breakers*. Its latitude is  $49^{\circ} 15'$  north, and its longitude  $233^{\circ} 20'$  east. The latitude of the other extreme is about  $50^{\circ}$ , and the longitude

longitude  $232^{\circ}$ . This last was named *Wood's Point*. It is high land, and projects to the south-west.

Between these two points, a large bay is formed, which the Commodore called *Hope Bay*; hoping, as he said, to find in it a good harbour; and the event proved that he was not mistaken. As we approached the coast, we saw the appearance of two inlets; one of which was in the north-west, and the other in the north-east corner of the bay. We bore up for the latter, and passed some breakers about a league from the shore. Half a league without them, we had nineteen and twenty fathoms water; but, after we had passed them, the depth increased to fifty fathoms; and farther in, the ground was unfathomable with the greatest length of line.

Though appearances were in our favour, we were not yet certain that there were any inlets; but, being in a deep bay, Captain Cook resolved to anchor, in order to endeavour to get some water, which we began to be much in need of. As we advanced, however, the existence of the inlet no longer remained doubtful. About five o'clock, when we reached the west point of it, we were becalmed for some time. In this situation, the Commodore ordered all the boats to be hoisted out, in order to tow the ships in. Presently a fresh breeze sprung up at north-west, with which we stretched up into an arm of the inlet, which

which ran in to the north-east. Here we were again becalmed, and found it necessary to anchor in eighty five fathoms water; and so near the land as to be able to reach it with a hawser. The Discovery was becalmed before she got within the arm, where she anchored in seventy fathoms water.

As soon as we approached the inlet, we perceived the coast to be inhabited; and three canoes came off to the ship, at the place where we were first becalmed; in one of which were two men, in another six, and in the other ten. Advancing pretty near us, a person stood up in one of the two last, and spoke for a considerable time, inviting us, as we supposed by his gestures, to go ashore; and, at the same time, continued throwing handfuls of feathers towards us. Some of his companions also threw a red powder in the same manner,

The person who was the orator upon this occasion, was clothed with the skin of some animal, and held something in each hand which rattled as he shook it. At length, grown weary with his repeated exhortations, of which we could not comprehend a word, he became quiet; and the others, in their turn, had something to say to us; but their speeches were neither so long, nor so vehement as that of the other. The hair of two or three of these people was strewed over  
with

with small white feathers; and that of others, with large ones, stuck into different parts.

The tumultuous noise having ceased, they lay at a small distance from the ship, conversing together with much ease and composure, without shewing the least distrust or surprize. Some of them rose, occasionally, and said something aloud, after the manner of their first harangues; and one, in particular, sung a most agreeable air, accompanied with a great degree of melody and softness; the word *baela* being frequently repeated as the burden of the song.

A breeze springing up soon after, brought us closer to the shore, when the canoes began to visit us in great numbers; having had, at one time, no less than thirty-two of them about the ship, containing from three to seven or eight persons each, and of both sexes. Several of these also stood up and spake aloud, using the same gestures as our first visitors. One canoe particularly attracted our observation, by a peculiar head, which had a bird's eye, and an enormous large beak, painted on it. The person who was in it, and who appeared to be a chief, was equally remarkable for his singular appearance; having a large quantity of feathers hanging from his head, and being painted or smeared in a very extraordinary manner. In his hand he had a carved bird of wood, of the size of a pigeon, with which he often rattled, like the person before-mentioned,



ed, and was equally vociferous, in his harangue; which was accompanied with many expressive gestures. Though our visitors were so peaceable, that they could not be suspected of any hostile intention, not any of them could be prevailed upon to come on board. They were very ready, however, to part with any thing they had, and received whatever we offered them in exchange; but were more solicitous after iron, than any of our other articles of commerce; appearing to be no strangers to the use of that valuable metal.

We were followed, by many of the canoes, to our anchoring-place; and a group, consisting of about ten or a dozen of them, continued alongside the Resolution the greatest part of the night. Hence we flattered ourselves, that we were so comfortably situated, as to be able to get all our wants supplied, and forget the delays and hardships we had experienced, in almost a constant succession of adverse winds and tempestuous weather, ever since our arrival upon this coast.

A  
V O Y A G E  
TO THE  
P A C I F I C O C E A N.  
B O O K I V.

TRANSACTIONS WITH THE NATIVES OF NORTH-  
AMERICA; DISCOVERIES ON THAT COAST AND  
THE EASTERN EXTREMITY OF ASIA, AND RE-  
TURNS SOUTHWARD TO THE SANDWICH ISLANDS.

C H A P. I.

*Arrival at the Sound—Moor in an excellent Har-  
bour—Visited by great Numbers of the Natives,  
who are an inoffensive Race of People—Variety  
of Articles brought to Barter, particularly hu-  
man Skulls—Mischievous Thefts committed—The  
Observatories erected on a Rock—Also a Forge  
erected—Alarmed at seeing the Natives arm them-  
selves—Distant Tribes not permitted by the Na-  
tives to traffic with us—Tempestuous Weather—  
A Survey of the Sound—Friendly Behaviour of the  
Natives of one of the Villages—Treatment received  
from an inhospitable Chief—Greeted with a Song by  
young Women—A second Visit to one of the Villages  
—Grass purchased—Departure of the Ships.*

**H**AVING happily found such excellent  
shelter for our ships, in an inlet whose coasts  
appeared to be inhabited by an inoffensive race

of people, we lost no time, after coming to anchor, in searching for a commodious harbour, where we might be stationed during our continuance in the Sound. Upon this service, Captain Cook sent three armed boats, under the command of Mr. King; and went himself, in a small boat, on the same business. He had no difficulty in finding what he wanted; for, on the north-west of the arm, and at a small distance from the ships, he found a convenient snug cove, perfectly adapted to our purpose. Mr. King was also successful and found a still better harbour, lying on the north-west side of the land. It would, however, have required more time to take the ships thither, than to the cove where the Captain had been; therefore his choice was determined in favour of the latter situation. But, apprehending that we could not transport our ships to it, and moor them properly, before night, had overtaken us, he thought it prudent to continue where we were till the next morning.

Plenty of canoes, filled with the inhabitants, were about the ships the whole day; and a reciprocal trade was commenced between us, which was conducted with the strictest harmony and integrity on both sides. Their articles of commerce were the skins of various animals; such as bears, sea-otters, wolves, foxes, deer, racoons, martins, and pole-cats. They also produced garments made of skins; and another kind of  
cloathing,

cloathing, fabricated from the bark of a tree, or a plant resembling hemp. Besides these articles, they had bows, arrows, and spears; fish-hooks, and various kinds of instruments; wooden vizors representing horrid figures; a sort of woollen-stuff; carved work; beads; and red ochre: also several little ornaments of thin brass and iron, resembling an horse-shoe, which they wear pendant at their noses. They had likewise several pieces of iron fixed to handles, somewhat resembling chisels. From their being in possession of these metals, it was natural for us to infer, that they must either have been visited before by persons of some civilized nation, or had connections with those on their own continent, who had some communication with them.

Among all the articles, however, which they exposed to sale, the most extraordinary were human skulls, and hands, with some of the flesh remaining on them, which they acknowledged they had been feeding on; and some of them, indeed, bore evident marks of their having been upon the fire. From this circumstance, it was but too apparent, that the horrid practice of devouring their enemies, is practised here, as much as at New-Zealand, and other South-sea islands. For the various articles they brought, they received in exchange, knives, chisels, nails, looking-glasses, buttons, pieces of iron and tin, or any kind of metal. They had not much inclination

for glafs-beads, and rejected every kind of cloth.

The next day was employed in hauling our ships into the cove, where they were moored. We found, on heaving up the anchor, notwithstanding the great depth of water, that rocks were at the bottom. These had greatly injured the cable, as well as the haulers that were carried out to warp the ship into the cove; consequently the whole bottom was strewed with rocks. The ship was now become very leaky in her upper works: the carpenters were therefore ordered to caulk her, and to repair any other defects they might discover.

In the course of this day (the 31st of March) the news of our arrival brought vast numbers of the natives about our ships. At one time we counted above a hundred canoes, each of which, on an average, had five people on board; few containing less than three; many having seven, eight, or nine; and one was manned with seventeen. Many of these were new visitors, which we discovered by their orations and ceremonies when they approached the ships.

If they, at first, had apprehended that we meant to be hostile, their fears were now removed; for they ventured on board the ships, and mixed with our people with the utmost freedom and familiarity. We discovered, however, by this intercourse, that they were as fond of pilfering as any

we had met with during our voyage: and they were much more mischievous than any of the other thieves we had found; for, having sharp instruments in their possession, they could, the instant that our backs were turned, cut a hook from a tackle, or a piece of iron from a rope.

Besides other articles, we lost several hooks in this manner, one of which weighed between twenty and thirty pounds. They stripped our boats of every morsel of iron that was worth taking away, though some of our men were always left in them as a guard. They were, indeed, so dexterous in effecting their purposes, that one fellow would contrive to amuse our people at one end of the boat, while another was forcing off the iron-work at the other. If an article that had been stolen, was immediately missed, the thief was easily detected, as they were fond of impeaching each other. But the prize was always reluctantly given up by the guilty person; and sometimes compulsive means were obliged to be exercised for that purpose.

Our ships being safely moored, we proceeded, the next day, to other necessary business. The observatories were taken ashore, and placed upon a rock on one side of the cove, not far from the Resolution. A party of men was ordered to cut wood, and clear a place for watering. Having plenty of pine-trees here, others were employed in brewing spruce-beer. The forge was also

erected to make the necessary iron-work for repairing the fore-mast, which had one of the ribs defective, and was otherwise incomplete.

We were daily visited by a considerable number of the natives; and, among them, we frequently saw new faces. They had a singular mode of introducing themselves on their first appearance. They paddled, with their utmost strength and activity, round both the ships; a chief, all this time, standing up with a spear in his hand, and speaking, or rather bawling, most vociferously.

Sometimes the face of this orator was covered with a mask, representing either a human countenance, or that of some other animal; and, instead of a spear, he had a kind of rattle in his hand. Having made this ceremonious circuit round the ship, they would come along-side, and then begin to traffic with us. Frequently, indeed, they would first entertain us with a song, in which their whole company joined, and produced a very agreeable harmony. During these visits, our principal care was to guard against their thievery.

We had, however, in the morning of the 4th of April, a very serious alarm. Our party, who were employed on shore in cutting wood and filling water, observed, that the natives, in all quarters, were arming themselves in the best manner they were able; and that those who had not proper weapons, were collecting sticks and stones,

stones. Hearing this, we thought it necessary to arm also; but, being resolved to act upon the defensive, the Commodore ordered all our workmen to repair to the rock, on which our observatories had been placed, leaving the supposed enemy in possession of the ground where they had assembled, which was within about a hundred yards of the Resolution's stern.

Our danger, however, was only imaginary; for these hostile preparations were directed against a body of their own countrymen, who were advancing to attack them. Our friends of the Sound, perceiving our apprehensions, exerted their best endeavours to convince us that this was really the case. We saw they had people looking out, on both sides of the cove, and canoes were frequently dispatched between them and the main body. The adverse party, on board of about a dozen large canoes, at length drew up in line of battle, off the south-point of the cove, a negotiation for the restoration of peace having been commenced. In conducting the treaty, several people in canoes passed between the two parties, and some debates ensued. At length the matter in dispute appeared to be adjusted: but the strangers were not permitted to approach the ships, nor to have any intercourse or dealings with us.

We were probably the occasion of the quarrel; the strangers, perhaps, insisting on having a



right of sharing in the advantages of a trade with us; and our first friends resolving to engross us entirely to themselves. We were convinced of this on many other occasions; nay, even among those who lived in the Sound, the weaker were often obliged to submit to the stronger party, and were plundered of every thing, without even attempting to make any resistance.

In the afternoon we resumed our work, and, the next day, rigged the fore-mast; the head of which not being large enough for the cap, the carpenter was ordered to fill up the vacant space. In examining the state of the mast-head for this purpose, both cheeks were discovered to be rotten; insomuch that there was not a possibility of repairing them. We were therefore obliged to get the mast out, and to supply it with new ones.

Thus, when almost ready for sea, all our work was to be done over again, and an additional repair was necessary to be undertaken, which would require much time to be completed. It was, however, fortunate, that these defects should be discovered, when we were so commodiously situated, as to be able to procure the materials that were requisite. For, in the cove where our ships lay, there were some small seasoned trees, perfectly adapted for our purpose; and two new cheeks were immediately made from one of these. In the morning of the 7th of April, having got the fore-mast out, we hauled it ashore, and the carpenters

penters were set to work upon it. Some of our lower standing rigging being much decayed, the Commodore embraced the opportunity, while the fore-mast was repairing, of ordering a new set of main-rigging to be fitted, and the fore-rigging to be improved.

From our putting into the Sound, till the 7th of April, the weather had been remarkably fine; but, in the morning of the 8th, the wind blew fresh at south-east, accompanied with hazy weather and rain; it increased in the afternoon, and in the evening it blew extremely hard. It came in heavy squalls, right into the cove, from over the high land on the opposite shore; and, though the ships were well moored, they were in a dangerous situation.

Though these tempestuous blasts succeeded each other quickly, they were of short duration, and, in the intervals, we had a perfect calm. Another misfortune now befel us. On board the Resolution, the mizen was the only mast that now remained rigged, with its top-mast up. The former was too defective to support the latter during these squalls, and gave way at the head, under the rigging. The gale abated about eight o'clock; but the rain continued, almost without intermission, for several days; during which time, a tent was erected over the fore-mast, that the carpenters might be enabled to proceed in their labours with some degree of convenience.

The

The natives were not discouraged, by this bad weather, from making us daily visits; and, in our situation, such visits were very acceptable to us. They frequently brought us a supply of fish, when we were unable to catch any with a hook and line, and we had not a convenient place to draw a net. The fish they brought us were small cod, and a small kind of bream, or sardine. On the 11th the main-rigging was fixed and got over head, notwithstanding the rainy weather; and, the next day, we took down the mizen-mast, the head of which was so rotten, that it dropped off in the flings.

We received a visit, in the evening, from a tribe of natives whom we had not seen before; and who, in general, made a better appearance than our old friends. The Commodore conducted them into the cabin, but there was not an object that demanded their attention; all our novelties were looked on with indifference, except by a very few, who shewed a certain degree of curiosity. The next day, a party of our men went into the woods, and cut down a tree, of which a mizen-mast was to be made. The day after it was conveyed to the place where the carpenters were at work upon the fore-mast. The wind, in the evening, veered to the south-east, and blew a very hard gale, attended with rain, till eight o'clock the next morning; at which time it abated, and veered again to the west.

The

The fore-mast being now finished, we hauled it along side; but, on account of the bad weather, could not get it in till the afternoon. We were expeditious in rigging it, while the carpenters were employed on the mizen-mast on shore. On the 16th, when they had made considerable progress in it, they discovered that the tree on which they were at work, was wounded, owing, it was imagined, to some accident in cutting it down. It therefore became necessary to procure another tree out of the woods, on which occasion, all hands were employed above half a day.

During these operations, many of the natives were about the ships, gazing on with an expressive surprize, which, from their general inattention, we did not expect. A party of strangers, in seven or eight canoes, came into the cove on the 18th, and after looking at us for some time, retired. We apprehended that our old friends, who, at this time, were more numerous about us than our new visitors, would not suffer them to have any dealings with us. It was evident, indeed, that the neighbouring inhabitants engrossed us entirely to themselves; and that they carried on a traffic with more distant tribes, in those articles they had received from us: for they frequently disappeared for four or five days together, and returned with fresh cargoes of curiosities and skins,

Such

Such of the natives as visited us daily, were the most beneficial to us ; for, after disposing of their trifles, they employed themselves in fishing, and we always partook of what they caught. We also procured from them a considerable quantity of good animal oil, which they brought to us in bladders. Some, indeed, attempted to cheat us, by mixing water with the oil ; and, once or twice, they so far imposed upon us, as to fill their bladders with water only. But, it was better for us to wink at these impositions, than suffer them to produce a quarrel ; for our articles of traffic chiefly consisted of trifles, and we found it difficult to produce a constant supply even of these. Beads, and such like toys, of which we had some remaining, were not highly estimated, Metal was principally demanded by our visitors ; and brass had now supplanted iron, being sought after, with such eagerness, that, before we left the Sound, hardly a bit of it was to be found in the ships, except what constituted a part of our necessary instruments. Suits of cloaths were stripped of their buttons ; bureaus of their furniture ; kettles, canisters, and candlesticks, all went to rack ; so that our American friends procured from us a greater variety of things, than any other nation we had visited.

Having had a fortnight's bad weather, Sunday the 19th being a fair day, we embraced the opportunity of getting up the top-masts and yards, and

and of fixing up the rigging. Most of our heavy work being now finished, the Commodore set out the next morning to survey the Sound; and, going first to the west point, he discovered a large village, and, before it, a very snug harbour, with from nine to four fathoms water.

The inhabitants of this village, who were numerous, many of whom the Commodore was no stranger to, received him with great courtesy, every one pressing him to enter his apartment; for several families have habitations under the same roof. He politely accepted the invitations, and the hospitable friends whom he visited, testified every mark of civility and respect.

Women were employed, in many of these habitations, in making dresses of the bark or plant already mentioned, and executed their business much like the inhabitants of New Zealand. Others were busy in opening sardines; large shoals of which we have seen brought on shore, and measured out to several people, who carried them home, where they performed the operation of curing them, which is done by smoke-drying. They are hung upon small rods; at first, about a foot over the fire; they are then removed higher and higher, to make room for others. When dried, they are closely packed in bales, and the bales covered with mats. Thus they are preserved till they are wanted; and they are not unpleasant food. They also cure cod and other large

large fish in the same manner; but these are sometimes dried in the open air.

Leaving this village, the Commodore proceeded up the west side of the Sound. For near three miles he saw several small islands, so situated as to form some convenient harbours, the depths being from thirty to seven fathoms. About two leagues within the Sound, on the same side, an arm runs in the direction of north-north-west, and another in the same direction about two miles further.

About a mile above the second arm, he found the ruins of a village. The framings of the houses remained standing; but the boards or roofs were taken away. Behind this deserted village is a small plain, covered with the largest pine-trees that the Commodore had ever seen. This was indeed singular, as most of the elevated ground on this side of the Sound appeared rather naked.

Passing from this place to the east side of the Sound, Captain Cook found, what he had before imagined, that it was an island under which the ships lay; and that many smaller ones lay scattered on the west side of it. Upon the main land, opposite the north end of our island, the Commodore observed a village, and landed there; but he was not so politely received by the inhabitants, as by those of the other village he had visited. This cold reception was occasioned by one surly chief, who would not suffer the Com-  
modore

modore to enter their houses, but followed him wherever he went; making expressive signs that he was impatient for him to be gone. Captain Cook attempted, but in vain, to sooth him with presents; for, though he did not refuse them, he continued the same kind of behaviour. But, notwithstanding this treatment from the inhospitable chief, some of the young women expeditiously apparelled themselves in their best, assembled in a body, and gave us a hearty welcome to the village, by joining in an agreeable song. Evening now drawing on, Captain Cook proceeded for the ships round the north-end of the island.

When he returned on board, he was informed that, in his absence, some strangers, in two or three large canoes, had made a visit to the ships; from whom our people understood, by signs, that they had come from the south-east. They brought with them several garments, skins, and other articles, which they bartered for some of ours. But the most remarkable circumstance was, that two silver table-spoons were purchased of them by our people, which appeared to be of Spanish manufacture. They were worn round the neck of one of these visitors, by way of ornament.

On the 21st, the mizen-mast was got in and rigged, and the carpenters ordered to make a new fore-top mast, to replace that which had been carried away. A number of strangers visited us about eight o'clock the next morning, in twelve

or



or thirteen canoes. They came from the southward; and when they had turned the point of the cove, they drew up in a body, where they remained about half an hour, at the distance of two hundred yards from the ships. We imagined, at first, they were afraid to approach; but in this we were mistaken, for they were only making preparations for an introductory ceremony.

At length they advanced towards the ships, all standing up in their canoes, and began to sing. Some of their songs were slow and solemn, in which they were joined by the whole body; others were in quicker time, and their notes were regularly accompanied by the motions of their hands, their paddles beating in concert on the sides of the canoes; and they, at the same time, exhibited the most expressive gestures. They remained silent, for a few seconds, after the conclusion of each song, and then began again, frequently pronouncing the word *hoee* as a kind of chorus.

Having thus favoured us with a specimen of their music, with which we were highly entertained for half an hour, they came nearer the ships and bartered with us. We now perceived that some of our old friends from the Sound were among them, who managed for the strangers in the traffic between us and them.

These visitors being gone, the Captains Cook and Clerke went with two boats to the village at  
the

the west point, where Captain Cook had been two days before, and had observed that plenty of grass was to be had near it; and it was necessary to get a supply of this, for the few remaining goats and sheep which were still on board. They experienced the same welcome reception that Captain Cook had met with before; and, soon after they were ashore, the Commodore ordered some of his people to begin cutting; not imagining that the natives would object to our furnishing ourselves with what could not be of any use to them, though essentially necessary for us. In this, however, he was mistaken, for as soon as our men began cutting the grass, some of the inhabitants would not permit them to proceed, saying, "*makook*," which signified that we must buy it first.

The Commodore, at this time, was in one of the houses; but, hearing of this, he repaired immediately to the field, where he found about a dozen claimants of different parts of the grass that grew on the premises. The Commodore treated with them for it, and having complied with the terms of his purchase, thought we had now full liberty to cut wherever we pleased. Here he was again mistaken; for he had so liberally paid the first pretended proprietors, that fresh demands were made from others; so that it almost appeared that every single blade of grass had a separate owner; and so many of them were to be satisfied, that his pockets presently became

empty. When they were, however, convinced that he had nothing more to give, they ceased to be importunate, and we were permitted to cut where we pleased, and as much as we pleased.

It is worthy of observation, that we never met with any uncivilized nation, or tribe, who possessed such strict notions of their having an exclusive property in the produce of their country, as the inhabitants of this Sound. They even wanted our people to pay for the wood and water that were carried on board. Had Captain Cook been present when these demands were made, he would doubtless have complied with them; but our workmen thought differently, and paid little or no attention to such claims. The natives thinking we were determined to pay nothing, at length ceased to apply. But they frequently took occasion to remind us, that their esteem for us had induced them to make us a present of wood and water.

While they remained at this village, Mr. Weber, who attended the two Captains thither, made a drawing of every thing that was thought curious, both within doors and without. This he was well enabled to do, as he had an excellent opportunity of inspecting, narrowly, the construction of their buildings, their furniture, and implements or utensils, as well as the most striking peculiarities of the modes of living of the inhabitants. Having, at length, completed all their opera-

operations at this village, the natives and the two Captains took a friendly leave of each other, and we returned to the ships in the afternoon. The 23d, 24th, and 25th of April were employed in preparing to put to sea; the sails were bent; the observatories and other articles removed from the shore; and both ships put into a proper condition for sailing.

Thus prepared, we intended to have put to sea on the morning of the 26th; but having both wind and tide against us, we were under a necessity of waiting till noon; when a calm succeeded the south-west wind, and the tide, at the same time, turning in our favour, we towed the ships out of the cove. We had variable airs and calms till about four in the afternoon, when a breeze sprung up, attended with thick hazy weather.

The mercury in the barometer sunk uncommonly low, and we had every appearance of an approaching storm from the southward. In this situation Captain Cook hesitated, for a short time, (as night was then approaching) whether he should sail immediately, or stay till the next morning. But his anxiety to proceed upon the voyage; and the fear of losing so good an opportunity of getting out of the Sound, operated more strongly upon his mind than the apprehension of danger, and he resolved to put to sea.

We were attended by the natives till we were almost out of the Sound; some in their canoes,

and others on board the ships. One of the chiefs, who had particularly attached himself to the Commodore, was among the last who parted from us. The Commodore, a little time before he went, made him a small present; for which he received, in return, a beaver-skin of a much superior value. This occasioned him to make some addition to his present, which pleased the chief so highly, that he presented to the Commodore the beaver-skin cloak which he then wore, and of which he was particularly fond.

Struck with this instance of generosity, and wishing him not to be a sufferer by his gratitude, Captain Cook insisted upon his acceptance of a new broad-sword, with a brass hilt, with which he appeared greatly delighted. We were earnestly importuned by the chief, and many of his countrymen, to pay them another visit; who, by way of inducement, promised to procure a large stock of skins. Further particulars relative to the country and its inhabitants, will furnish materials for the two subsequent chapters.

## C H A P. II.

*Directions for sailing into the Sound—The adjacent Country described—Remarks on the Weather and Climate—Trees and other vegetable Productions—Racoons, Martins, Squirrels, and other Quadrupeds—Variety of Skins brought for Sale—Whales, and other Sea Animals—The Sea Otter described—Birds—Oceanic Birds—Fish—Shell Fish—Snakes and Lizards—Insects—Stones—Description of the Natives—Their Colour—Formation—Dress and Ornaments—Particular Dresses, and horrible wooden Masks—Leathern Mantle for War—Their Dispositions—Songs—Musical Instruments—Their Fondness for Metals, which they take every Opportunity of stealing.*

**K**ING George's Sound was the appellation given by the Commodore to this inlet, on our first arrival; but he was afterwards informed that the natives called it Nootka. The entrance is in the east corner of Hope Bay; its latitude is  $49^{\circ}, 33'$  north, and its longitude  $233^{\circ}, 12'$  east. The east coast of that bay is covered by a chain of funken rocks; and, near the Sound, are some islands and rocks above water. We enter the Sound between two rocky points, lying east-south-east, and west-north-west from each other, distant about four miles. The Sound widens within these

points, and extends in to the northward at least four leagues.

A number of islands, of various sizes, appear in the middle of the Sound. The depth of water; not only in the middle of the Sound, but also close to some parts of its shore, is from forty-seven to ninety fathoms, or more. Within its circuit, the harbours and anchoring-places are numerous. The cove, where our ships anchored, is on the east-side of the Sound, and also on the east of the largest island. It is, indeed, covered from the sea, which is its principal recommendation, for it is exposed to the south-east winds, which sometimes blow with great violence, and make great devastation, as was but too apparent in many places.

Upon the sea-coast the land is tolerably high and level; but, within the Sound, it rises into steep hills, which have an uniform appearance, ending in roundish tops, with sharp ridges on their sides. Many of these hills are high, and others are of a more moderate height; but all of them are covered to their tops with the thickest woods. Some bare spots are to be seen on the sides of some of the hills, but they are not numerous, though they sufficiently shew the general rocky disposition of these hills. They have, indeed, no soil upon them, except what has been produced from rotten mosses and trees, of the depth of about two feet. Their foundations are,  
indeed,

indeed, nothing more than stupendous rocks; which are of a grey or whitish cast when exposed to the weather; but, when broken, are of a blueish grey colour. The rocky shores consist entirely of this; and the beaches of the little coves in the Sound are composed of fragments of it.

During our stay the weather nearly corresponded with that which we had experienced when we were off the coast. We had fine clear weather, if the wind was between north and west; but if more to the southward, hazy, accompanied with rain. The climate appears to be infinitely milder than that on the east coast of America, under the same parallel of latitude. We perceived no frost in any of the low ground; but, on the contrary, vegetation proceeded very briskly, for we saw grass, at this time, upwards of a foot long.

The trees, of which the woods are principally composed, are the Canadian pine, white cypress, and two or three other sorts of pine. The two first are in the greatest abundance, and, at a distance, resemble each other; though they are easily distinguished on a nearer view, the cypress being of a paler green than the other. In general, the trees grow here with great vigour, and are of a large size. At this early season of the year, we saw but little variety of other vegetable productions.

About the rocks, and borders of the woods, we saw some strawberry plants, and raspberry, currant,



rant, and gooseberry bushes, all in a flourishing state. There were also a few black alder-trees; a species of sow-thistle; some crow's-foot with a fine crimson flower, and two sorts of *anthericum*. We also met with some wild rose-bushes, just budding; some young leeks, a small sort of grass, and some water-cresses, besides a great abundance of *andromeda*. Within the woods are two sorts of underwood shrubs, unknown to us, and some mosses and ferns.

The season of the year did not permit us to acquire much knowledge of the vegetables of this country; and it was impossible, from our situation, to learn much about its animals. The want of water induced us to enter the Sound at first; and the accidents that happened there, though they obliged us to stay longer than we intended, were unfavourable to our acquiring any knowledge of this kind. It was absolutely necessary that every person should be employed in forwarding the necessary business of the ships; which was the principal object, as the season was advancing, and the success of the voyage depended upon their diligence in performing their several tasks. Excursions of any kind were, therefore, never attempted.

Lying in a cove, on an island, all the animals that we saw alive, were two or three racoons, martins, and squirrels; some of our people, indeed, who landed on the continent, on the south-east side

tide of the Sound, saw the prints of a bear's feet, not far from the shore. The only account, therefore, that we can furnish of the quadrupeds, is taken from the skins which we purchased of the inhabitants; and these were sometimes so mutilated in the heads, tails, and paws, that we could not even guess to what animals they belonged; though others were either so perfect, or so well known, that they did not admit of a doubt about them. The most common among them were bears, deer, foxes, and wolves. Bear-skins were very plentiful, generally of a shining black colour, but not very large. The deer skins were not so plentiful, and appeared to belong to what the historians of Carolina call the fallow-deer; though Mr. Pennant distinguishes it by the name of Virginian deer, and thinks it quite a different species from ours. Their foxes are numerous, and of several varieties; the skins of some being yellow, with a black tip at the tail; others, of a reddish yellow, intermixed with black; and others of an ash colour, also intermixed with black.

When the skins were so mutilated as to admit of a doubt, our people applied the name of fox or wolf indiscriminately. At length, we met with an entire wolf's skin, and it was grey. Here is the common martin, the pine martin, and another of a lighter brown colour. The ermine is also found in this country, but is small, and not very common; its hair is not remarkably fine, though

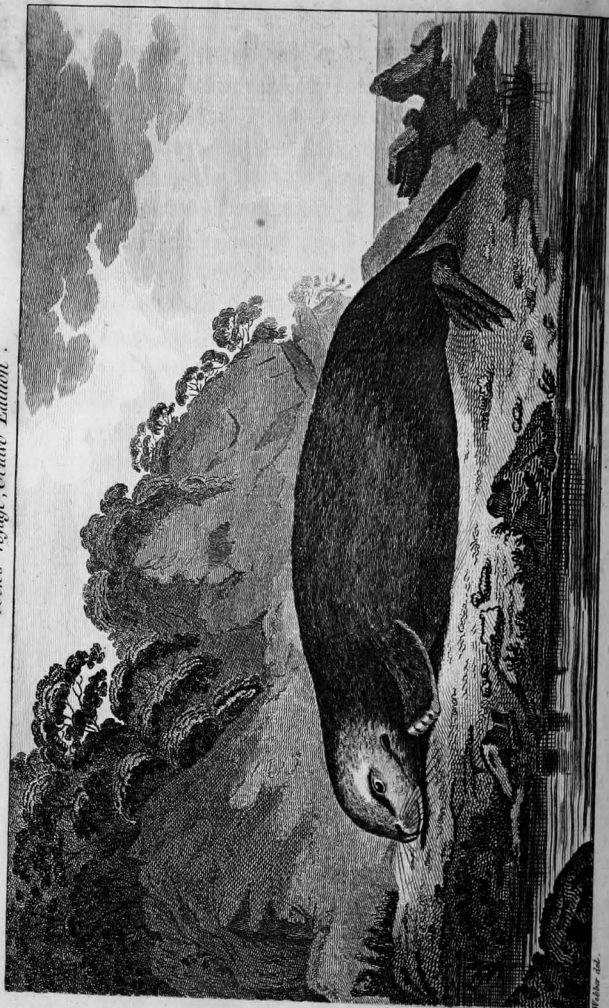
though the animal is entirely white, except about an inch at the tip of the tail. The racoons and squirrels are such as are common, but the latter is not so large as ours, and has a rusty colour extending the length of the back.

We were sufficiently clear respecting the animals already mentioned, but there were two others that we could not, with any certainty, distinguish. One of them, we concluded to be the elk or mouse deer; and the other was conjectured to be the wild cat or *lynx*. Hogs, dogs, and goats, have not yet made their appearance in this place. Nor have the natives any knowledge of our brown rats, to which they applied the name they give to squirrels, when they saw them on board the ships.

The sea animals near the coast, are whales, porpoises, and seals; the latter, from the skins we saw, seeming to be of the common sort. The porpoise is the *Phocena*. Though the sea otter is amphibious, we shall consider him as belonging to this class, as living principally in the water. We doubted, for some time, whether the skins, which the natives sold us for otter skins, really belonged to that animal; but, a short time before our departure, a whole one, just killed, was purchased from some strangers, of which Mr. Webber made a drawing. It was young, weighing only twenty-five pounds; was of a glossy black colour, but many of the hairs being  
tip



*Cook's Voyage, Octavo Edition.*



*A SEA OTTER.*

*W. H. L. del.*

*B. R. 11. 11.*

tip with white, gave it, at first sight, a greyish cast. The face, throat, and breast, were of a light brown, or yellowish white; and, in many of the skins, that colour extended the whole length of the belly. In each jaw it had six cutting teeth; two in the lower jaw being exceeding small, and placed without, at the base of the two in the middle. In these respects, it differs from those found by the Russians, and also in the outer toes of the hind feet not being skirted with a membrane. There also appeared a greater variety in colour, than is mentioned by those who describe the Russian sea otters. It is most probable, that these changes of colour naturally take place at the different gradations of life. The very young ones had brown coarse hair, with a little fur underneath; but those of the size of the animal just described, had a greater quantity of that substance. After they have attained their full growth, they lose the black colour, which is succeeded by a deep brown. At that period, they have a greater quantity of fine fur, and very few long hairs. Some, which we supposed to be older, were of a chestnut brown; and we saw some few skins that were of a perfect yellow. The fur of these creatures is certainly finer than that of any other animal we know of; consequently the discovery of this part of North America, where so valuable an article of commerce is to be procured, ought

ought certainly to be considered as a matter of some consequence.

Birds are far from being numerous here, and those that are to be seen are remarkably shy, owing, perhaps, to their being continually harraſſed by the natives, either to eat them, or become poſſeſſed of their feathers to be worn as ornaments. There are crows and ravens, not differing, in the leaſt, from thoſe in England: alſo a jay or magpie; the common wren, which is the only ſinging bird we heard; the Canadian thruſh; the brown eagle, with a white head and tail; a ſmall ſpecies of hawk; a heron; and the large-creſted American king-fiſher. There are alſo ſome that have not yet been mentioned by thoſe who have treated on natural hiſtory. The two firſt are *ſpecies* of wood-peckers. One is ſomewhat ſmaller than a thruſh, of a black colour on the back, having white ſpots on the wings; the head, neck, and breaſt, of a crimſon colour, and the belly of a yellowiſh olive colour; whence it might, with propriety, be called the yellow-bellied wood-pecker. The other is larger and more elegant; the back is of a duſky brown colour, richly waved with black; the belly has a red-diſh caſt, with black ſpots; it has alſo a black ſpot on the breaſt, and the lower part of the wings and tail are of a ſcarlet colour; the upper part blackiſh. A crimſon ſtreak runs on each ſide, from the angle of the mouth, a little down  
the

the neck. The third and fourth are, one of the finch kind, not larger than a linnet, of a dusky colour, black head and neck, and white bill; and a sand-piper, of a dusky brown colour, with a broad white band across the wings, of the size of a small pigeon. There are also humming birds, which differ, in some degree, from the numerous sorts already known of this delicate little animal.

The quebrantahueños, shags, and gulls, were seen off the coast; and the two last were also frequent in the Sound. There are two sorts of wild ducks; one of which was black, with a white head; the other was white, and had a red bill, but of a larger size. Here are also the greater *lunme*, or diver, which are found in our northern countries. Some swans too, were once or twice seen flying to the northward, but we are unacquainted with their haunts. On the shores we found another sand-piper, about the size of a lark, and not unlike the burre: also a plover, very much resembling our common sea-lark.

Though the variety of fish is not very great here, they are more plentiful in quantity than birds. The principal sorts are the common herring, which are very numerous, though not exceeding seven inches in length; a smaller sort, which, though larger than the anchovy, or sardine, is of the same kind; a silver-coloured bream, and another of a gold brown colour, with narrow blue stripes. It is most probable that the  
her-



herrings, and sardines; come in large shoals, at stated seasons; as is usual with those kind of fish. The two sorts of breams may be reckoned next to these in quantity; and those which were full grown weighed about a pound. The other fish were scarce, and consisted of a brown kind of *sculpin*, such as are taken on the coast of Norway; another of a reddish cast; frost fish; a large one, without scales, resembling the bull-head; and a small brownish cod with whitish spots; also a red fish, of nearly the same size, which some of our people had seen in the straits of Magellan; and another somewhat like the hake. Considerable numbers of those fish called the *chimera*, or little sea-wolves, are met with here. Sharks also frequent the Sound, the teeth of which many natives had in their possession. The other marine animals are a small cruciated *medusa*, or blubber; star-fish, small crabs, and a large cuttle-fish.

About the rocks there is an abundance of large muscles; also sea-ears; and we often found shells of pretty large plain *chama*. Also some *trochi* of two species; a curious *murex*; rugged wilks; and a snail. Besides these, there are some plain cockles and limpets. Many of the muscles are a span long; in some of which there are large pearls, but they are disagreeable both in colour and shape. It is probable that there is red coral either in the sound or on the coast; large branches  
of

of it having been seen in the canoes of the natives.

The only reptiles observed here, were brown snakes, about two feet in length, having whitish stripes on the back and sides; and brownish water lizards. The former are so perfectly harmless, that we have seen the natives carry them alive in their hands. The insect tribe seem to be more numerous. For though the season for their appearance was only beginning, we saw several different sorts of butterflies, all of which were common: we also found some humble bees; gooseberry moths; a few beetles; two or three sorts of flies, and some musquitoes.

Though we found both iron and copper here, we did not imagine that either of them belonged to this place. We did not even see the ores of any metal, except a coarse red ochry substance, used by the natives in painting or staining themselves. This may, perhaps, contain a small quantity of iron; as may also a black and white pigment made use of for the same purpose.

Exclusive of the rock, which constitutes the shores and mountains, we saw, among the natives, some articles made of a hard black granite, which was neither very compact, nor fine grained; also a greyish whetstone; the common oil stone; and a black sort, little inferior to the hone-stone. The natives were seen to use transparent leafy glimmer, and a brown leafy or martial sort. They  
had

had also pieces of rock crystal. The two first articles were probably to be obtained near the spot, as they had considerable quantities of them; but the latter, it may be supposed, came from a greater distance, or is extremely scarce; for our visitors would not part with it without a very valuable consideration.

The stature of the natives is, in general, below the common standard; but their persons are not proportionably slender, being usually pretty plump, though not muscular. Their soft fleshiness, however, seems never to swell into corpulence; and many of the older people are rather lean. Most of the natives have round full visages, which are sometimes broad, with high prominent cheeks. Above these, the face frequently appears fallen in quite across between the temples; the nose flattens at its base, has wide nostrils, and a rounded point. The forehead is low, the eyes small, black, and languishing; the mouth round, the lips thick, and the teeth regular and well set, but not remarkable for their whiteness.

Some have no beards at all, and others only a small thin one upon the point of the chin. This does not arise from an original deficiency of hair on that part, but from their plucking it out by the roots; for those who do not destroy it, have not only considerable beards on every part of the chin, but also whiskers, or mustachias, running from the upper lip to the lower jaw obliquely down-

*Cook's Voyage Octavo Edition*



A MAN and WOMAN of NOOTKA SOUND.

*W. H. H. H. H. H.*



downward\*. Their eye-brows are also scanty and narrow; but they have abundance of hair on the head, which is strong, black, straight, and lank. Their necks are short, and their arms are rather clumsy, having nothing of beauty or elegance in their formation. The limbs, in all of them, are small in proportion to the other parts; besides, they are crooked and ill-formed, having projecting ancles, and large feet awkwardly shaped. The latter defect seems to be occasioned, in a great measure, by their sitting so continually on their hams or knees.

Their colour cannot be properly ascertained, their bodies being incrustated with paint and nastiness; though, when these have been carefully rubbed off, the skin was little inferior, in whiteness, to that of the Europeans; though of that palish cast which distinguishes the inhabitants of our southern nations. Some of them, when young, appear rather agreeable, when compared to the generality of the people; that period of life being attended with a peculiar degree of animation; but, after a certain age, the distinction is hardly observable; a remarkable sameness characterizes every countenance, dulness and want of expression being visibly portrayed in every

\* It is a mistaken notion, though espoused by eminent writers, that American Indians have no beard. See *Carver's Travels*, p. 224, 225; and *Marsden's History of Sumatra*, p. 39, 40.

visage. The women, in general, are of the same size, colour, and form, with the men; nor is it easy to distinguish them, as they possess no natural feminine delicacies. Nor was there a single one to be found, even among those who were in their prime, who had the least pretensions to beauty or comeliness.

Their dress, in common, is a flaxen kind of mantle, ornamented with a narrow stripe of fur on the upper edge, and fringes at the lower edge. Passing under the left arm, it is tied over the right shoulder, leaving both arms perfectly free. Sometimes the mantle is fastened round the waist by a girdle of coarse matting. Over this is worn a small cloak of the same substance, reaching to the waist, also fringed at the bottom. They wear a cap like a truncated cone, or a flower-pot, made of very fine matting, ornamented with a round knob, or a bunch of leathern tassels, having a string passing under the chin, to prevent its blowing off.

The above dress is common to both sexes, and the men often wear, over their other garments, the skin of some animal, as a bear, wolf, or sea-otter, with the hair outwards; sometimes tying it before, and sometimes behind, like a cloak. They throw a coarse mat about their shoulders in rainy weather, and they have woollen garments which are but little used. They generally wear their hair hanging loosely down; but, those  
who

who have not a cap, tie it into a kind of bunch on the crown of the head:

Their dress is certainly convenient, and, were it kept clean, would not be inelegant; but, as they are continually rubbing their bodies over with a red paint, mixed with oil, their garments become greasy, and contract a rancid offensive smell. The appearance, indeed, of these people, is both wretched and filthy, and their heads and garments swarm with lice. So lost are they to every idea of cleanliness, that we frequently saw them pick off these vermin, and eat them with the greatest composure.

Their bodies, it has been observed, are always covered with red paint, but their faces are ornamented with a variety of colours; a black, a brighter red, or a white colour: the last of these gives them a ghastly horrible appearance. They likewise strew the brown martial *mica* over the paint, which causes it to glitter. Many of their ears are perforated in the lobe, where they make a large hole, and two smaller ones higher up on the outer edge. In these holes are hung bits of bone, quills fastened upon a leathern thong, shells, bunches of tassels, or thin pieces of copper. In some, the *septum* of the nose is also perforated, and a piece of cord drawn through it. Others wear, at the same place, pieces of copper, brass, or iron, shaped somewhat like a horse-shoe, the narrow opening receiving the *septum*, so that it may



be pinched gently by the two points, and thus the ornament hangs over the upper lip. The rings of our buttons were eagerly purchased, and appropriated to this use. Their bracelets, which they wear about their wrists, are bunches of white bugle beads, or thongs with tassels, or a broad black horny shining substance. Round their ankles they frequently wear leathern thongs, or the sinews of animals curiously twisted.

Such are their common dresses and ornaments, but they have some that are used only on extraordinary occasions, such as going to war, and exhibiting themselves to strangers in ceremonial visits. Amongst these are the skins of wolves; or bears, tied on like their other garments, but edged with broad borders of fur, ingeniously ornamented with various figures. These are occasionally worn separately, or over their common clothing. The most usual head dress, on these occasions, is a quantity of withe, wrapped about the head, with large feathers, particularly those of eagles, stuck in it; or it is entirely covered with small white feathers. At the same time, the face is variously painted, the upper and lower parts being of opposite colours, and the strokes having the appearance of fresh gashes; or it is smeared with a kind of fat or tallow, mixed with paint, formed into a great variety of figures, somewhat like carved work.

The

The hair, sometimes, is separated into small parcels, and tied, at intervals, with thread; and others tie it together behind, after the English manner, and stick in it some branches of the *cupressus thyoides*. Thus equipped, they have a truly savage and ridiculous appearance, which is much heightened when they assume their monstrous decorations. These consist of a great variety of wooden masks, applied to the face, forehead, or upper part of the head. Some of these visors resemble human faces, having hair, beards, and eye-brows; others represent the heads of birds, and many the heads of animals; such as deer, wolves, porpoises, and others.

These representations generally exceed the natural size, and they are frequently strewed with pieces of the foliaceous *mica*, which makes them glitter, and augments their deformity. Sometimes they even exceed this, and fix large pieces of carved work upon the head, projecting to a considerable distance, and resembling the prow of a canoe. So much do they delight in these disguises, that, for want of another mask, we saw one of them thrust his head into a tin-kettle which he had bought from us.

Whether these extravagant masquerade ornaments are used on any religious occasion, or in any kind of diversion, or whether they are calculated to intimidate by their monstrous appearance, or as decoys when hunting animals, is uncertain.

certain. But, if travellers, in an ignorant and credulous age, when more than marvellous things were supposed to exist, had seen several people decorated in this manner, and had not approached so near them as to be undeceived, they would have believed, and have endeavoured to make others believe, that a race of beings existed, partaking of the nature of man and beast.

Among the people of Nootka, one of the dresses seems peculiarly adapted to war. It is a thick tanned leathern mantle doubled, and appears to be the skin of an elk, or buffalo. This is fastened on in the ordinary manuer, and is so contrived as to cover the breast quite up to the throat; part of it, at the same time, falling down to their heels. This garment is, sometimes, very curiously painted, and is not only strong enough to resist arrows, but, as we understood from them, even spears cannot pierce it; so that it may be considered as their compleatest defensive armour. Sometimes they wear a sort of leathern cloak, over which are rows of the hoofs of deer, placed horizontally, and covered with quills; which, on their moving, make a loud rattling noise. Whether this part of their garb is intended to strike terror in war, or to be used on ceremonious occasions, is uncertain; but we saw one of their musical entertainments, which was conducted by a man habited in this manner, having a mask on, and shaking his rattle.

Though

Though we cannot view these people without a kind of horror, when they are thus strangely apparelled, yet, when divested of these extravagant dresses, and beheld in their common habit, they have no appearances of ferocity in their countenances; but, as has been already observed, they seem to be of a quiet phlegmatic disposition; deficient in animation and vivacity, to render themselves agreeable in society. They are rather reserved than loquacious; but their gravity seems constitutional, and not to arise from a conviction of its propriety, or to be the result of any particular mode of education; for, in their highest paroxysms of rage, they have not heat of language, or significancy or gestures, to express it sufficiently.

The orations which they make on all public occasions, are little more than short sentences, and sometimes only single words, forcibly repeated in one tone of voice, accompanied with a single gesture at every sentence; at the same time jerking their whole body a little forward, with their knees bending, and their arms hanging down by their sides.

From their exhibiting human skulls and bones to sale, there is little reason to doubt of their treating their enemies with a degree of brutal cruelty; but, as this circumstance rather marks a general agreement of character among almost every uncivilized tribe, in every age and coun-

try, they are not to be reproached with any charge of peculiar inhumanity. Their disposition, in this respect, we had not any reason to judge unfavourably of. They appear to be docile, courteous, and good-natured; but they are quick in resenting injuries, notwithstanding the predominancy of their phlegm; and, like all other passionate people, as quickly forgetting them.

These fits of passion never extended farther than the parties immediately concerned; the spectators never entering into the merits of the quarrel, whether it was with any of us, or among their own people; shewing as much indifference, as if they were wholly unacquainted with the whole transaction. It was common to see one of them rave and scold, while all his agitation did not in the least excite the attention of his countrymen, and when we could not discover the object of his displeasure. They never betray the least symptom of timidity upon these occasions, but seem resolutely determined to punish the insulter. With respect to ourselves, they were under no apprehensions about our superiority; but, if any difference arose, were as anxious to avenge the wrong, as if the cause of quarrel had been among themselves.

Their other passions appear to lie dormant, especially their curiosity. Few expressed any desire or inclination to see or examine things with which they were unacquainted; and which, to a curious  
observer,

observer, would have appeared astonishing. If they could procure the articles they knew and wanted, they were perfectly satisfied; regarding every thing else with great indifference. Nor did our persons, dress, and behaviour (though so very different from their own) or even the size and construction of our ships, seem to command their admiration or attention.

Their indolence may, indeed, be a principal cause of this. But it must be admitted, that they are not wholly unsusceptible of the tender passions, which is evident from their being fond of music, and that too of the truly pathetic kind. Their songs are generally slow and solemn; but their music is less confined than that which is usually found in other rude nations; the variations being very numerous and expressive, and the melody powerfully soothing. Besides their concerts, sonnets were frequently sung by single performers keeping time by striking the hand against the thigh. Though solemnity was predominant in their music, they sometimes entertained us in a gay and lively strain, and even with a degree of pleasantry and humour.

A rattle and a small whistle, are the only instruments of music which we have seen among them. The rattle is used when they sing; but upon what occasions the whistle is used, we never knew, unless it be when they assume the figures of particular animals, and endeavour to imitate  
their

their howl, or cry. We once saw one of these people dressed in the skin of a wolf, with the head covering his own, striving to imitate that animal, by making a squeaking noise with a whistle he had in his mouth. The rattles are generally in the shape of a bird, with small pebbles in the belly, and the tail is the handle. They have another sort, which resembles a child's rattle.

Some of them displayed a disposition to knavery, and, in trafficking with us, took away our goods without making any return. But of this we had few instances, and we had abundant reason to approve the fairness of their conduct. Their eagerness, however, to possess iron, brass, or any kind of metal, was so great, that, when an opportunity presented itself, few of them could resist the temptation to steal it. The natives of the South-sea islands, as appears in many instances, would steal any thing they could find, without considering whether it was useful to them or not. The novelty of the object, was a sufficient inducement for them to get possession of it by any means. They were rather actuated by a childish curiosity, than by a thievish disposition. The inhabitants of Nootka, who made free with our property, are entitled to no such apology. The appellation of thief is certainly due to them; for they knew that what they pilfered from us, might be converted to the purposes of private utility; and,

and, according to their estimation of things, was really valuable. Luckily for us, they set no value upon any of our articles, except the metals. Linens, and many other things, were secure from their depredations, and we could safely leave them hanging out all night ashore, without being watched. The principle which prompted these people to pilfer from us, would probably operate in their intercourse with each other. We had, indeed, abundant reason to believe, that stealing is very common amongst them, and frequently produces quarrels, of which we saw more instances than one.



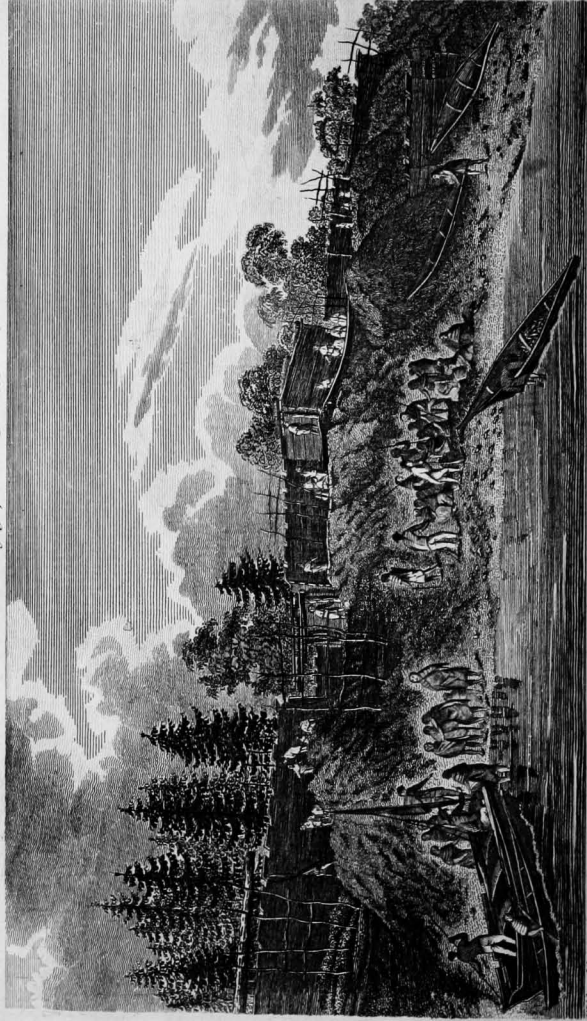
## C H A P. III.

*Number of Inhabitants at Nootka Sound—Manner of building their Houses—Description of their Inside, Furniture, and Utenfils—Their Filibinefs—Wooden Images, called Klumma—Employments of the Men—Indolence of the young Men—Of the Women, and their Employments—Different Sorts of Food, and Manner of preparing it—Bows—Arrows—Spears—Slings, and other Weapons—Manufactures of Woollen, &c.—Mechanic Arts—Design and Execution in Carving and Painting—Canoes—Implements used in Hunting and Fishing—Iron Tools common among them—Manner of procuring that, and other Metals—Language, &c.*

THE only inhabited parts of the Sound, seem to be the two villages already mentioned. A pretty exact computation of the number of inhabitants in both, might be made from the canoes that visited our ships, the second day after our arrival. They consisted of about a hundred, which, upon an average, contained at least five persons each. But, as there were very few women, old men, children, or youths, then among them, we may reasonably suppose, that the number of the inhabitants of the two villages could not be less



*Cook's Voyage, Quarto Edition.*



*A VIEW OF THE HABITATIONS IN NOOTKA SOUND.*

less than four times the number of our visitors; being two thousand in the whole.

The village which is situated at the entrance of the Sound, stands on the side of a pretty steep ascent, extending from the beach to the wood. The houses consist of three ranges or rows, placed at almost equal distances behind each other, the front row being the largest; and there are a few straggling houses at each end. These rows are intersected by narrow paths, or lanes, at irregular distances, passing upward; but those between the houses are considerably broader. Though this general disposition has some appearance of regularity, there is none in the respective houses; for every division made by the paths, may either be considered as one or more houses; there being no regular separation to distinguish them by, either within or without. These erections consist of very long broad planks, resting upon the edges of each other, tied, in different parts, with withes of pine-bark. They have only slender posts on the outside, at considerable distances from each other, to which they are also fastened; but there are some larger poles within, placed aslant. The sides and ends of these habitations are about seven or eight feet in height, but the back part is somewhat higher. The planks, therefore, which compose the roof, slant forward, and, being loose, may be moved at pleasure. They may either be put close

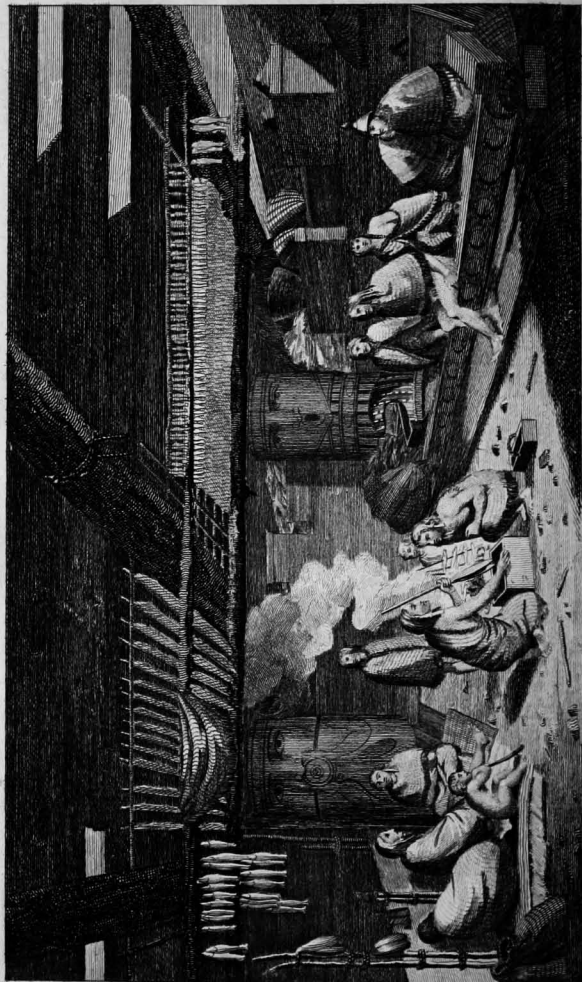
to exclude the rain, or separated to admit the light in fine weather.

Upon the whole, however, they are most miserable dwellings, and display very little attention or ingenuity in their construction: for, though the side-planks are pretty close to each other in some places, they are quite open in others. Besides, these habitations have no regular doors, and can only be entered by a hole, which the unequal length of the planks has accidentally made. In the sides of the house they have also holes to look out at, serving for windows; but these are very irregularly disposed, without attending, in the least, to the shape and size of them.

Within the habitations, we have frequently a view from one end to the other of these ranges of building; for, though there are some appearances of separations on each side, for the accommodation of different persons or families, they do not intercept the sight; and generally consist of pieces of plank, extending from the side to the middle of the house. On the sides of each of these parts is a little bench, about five or six inches higher than the rest of the floor, covered with mats, whereon the family sit and sleep. The length of these benches is generally seven or eight feet, and the breadth four or five. The fire-place, which has neither hearth nor chimney, is in the middle of the floor. One house, in particular, was nearly separated from the rest by a close partition; and  
this



*Cook's Voyage, Octavo Edition.*



*The Inside of a House, in Nootka Sound.*

this was the most regular building of any we had seen. In it there were four of these benches, each holding a single family at the corner ; but it had not any separation by boards, and the middle of the house seemed to be common to all the inhabitants.

The furniture of their houses consists principally of chests and boxes of various sizes, piled upon each other, at the sides or ends of the house ; in which are deposited their garments, skins, masks, and other articles that are deemed valuable. Many of them are double, or the upper one serves as a lid to the other : some have a lid fastened with thongs ; others, that are very large, have a square hole cut in the upper part, for the convenience of putting things in, or taking them out. They are frequently painted black, studded with the teeth of animals, or rudely carved with figures of birds, &c. as decorations. They have also square and oblong pails ; round wooden cups and bowls ; wooden troughs, of about two feet in length, out of which they eat their food ; bags of matting, baskets of twigs, &c.

Their implements for fishing, and other things, are hung up, or scattered in different parts of the house, without any kind of order, making, in the whole, a perfect scene of confusion ; except on the sleeping benches, which have nothing on them but the mats, which are of a superior quality to those



those that they usually have to sit on in their boats.

The irregularity and confusion of their houses is, however, far exceeded by their nastiness and stench. They not only dry their fish within doors, but they also gut them there ; which, together with their bones and fragments thrown upon the ground at meals, occasions several heaps of filth, which are never removed, till it becomes troublesome, from their bulk, to pass over them. Every thing about the house stinks of train-oil, fish, and smoke ; and every part of it is as filthy as can be imagined.

Notwithstanding all this filth and confusion, many of these houses are decorated with images ; which are nothing more than the trunks of large trees, of the height of four or five feet, placed at the upper end of the apartment, with a human face carved on the front, and the hands and arms upon the sides. These figures too are variously painted, and make, upon the whole, a most ridiculous appearance. These images are generally called *Klumma* ; but the names of two particular ones, standing abreast of each other, at the distance of about three or four feet, were *Natchkoa* and *Matseeta*. A sort of curtain, made of mat, usually hung before them, which the natives were sometimes unwilling to remove : and when they did consent to unveil them, they seemed to express themselves in a very mysterious manner. It  
seems

seems probable that they sometimes make offerings to them; for, if we rightly interpreted their signs, they requested us to give something to these images, when they drew the mats from before them.

From these circumstances, it was natural for us to suppose that they were representatives of their gods, or some superstitious symbols; and yet they were held in no very extraordinary degree of estimation, for, with a small quantity of brass, or iron, any person might have purchased all the gods in the place.

Mr. Webber, in drawing a view of the inside of a Nootka house, wherein these figures are represented, was interrupted, and hindered from proceeding, by one of the inhabitants. Thinking a bribe would have a proper effect upon this occasion, Mr. Webber made him an offer of a button from his coat, which, being metal, immediately operated as it was intended, and he was at liberty to proceed as before. But soon after he had made a beginning, he was again interrupted by the same man, who held a mat before the figures. He therefore gave him another button, and was suffered again to proceed. He then renewed his former practice, till Mr. Webber had parted with every single button; and then permitted him to proceed without any farther obstruction.

The men seem to be chiefly employed in fishing, and killing animals for the sustenance of

their families; few of them being seen engaged in any business in the houses; but the women were occupied in manufacturing their garments, and in curing their fardines, which they also carry from the canoes to their houses. The women also go in the small canoes, to gather muscles and other shell-fish. They are as dexterous as the men in the management of these canoes; and when there are men in the canoes with them, they are paid very little attention to on account of their sex, none of the men offering to relieve them from the labour of the paddle. Nor do they shew them any particular respect or tenderness on other occasions.

The young men are remarkably indolent; being generally sitting about, in scattered companies, basking themselves in the sun, or wallowing in the sand upon the beach, like so many hogs, without any kind of covering. This disregard of decency was, however, confined solely to the men. The women were always decently clothed, and behaved with great propriety; justly meriting all commendation for a modest bashfulness, so becoming their sex. In them it is the more meritorious, as the men have not even a sense of shame.

Besides seeing something of their domestic life and employments, we were enabled to form some judgment of their disposition, and method of living, from the frequent visits received from them.

them at our ships, in the canoes; in which we understood they pass much of their time, especially in the summer: for they not only eat and sleep frequently in them, but lie and bask themselves in the sun, as we had seen them at their village. Their large canoes are, indeed, sufficiently spacious for that purpose; and are, except in rainy weather, more comfortable habitations than their filthy houses.

Their greatest reliance for food seems to be upon the sea, as affording fish, and sea-animals. The principal of the first are herrings and sardines, two species of bream, and some small cod. The herrings and sardines not only serve to be eaten fresh in their season, but to be dried and smoaked as stores. The herrings also afford them another grand resource for food; which is a vast quantity of roe, prepared in a very extraordinary manner. It is strewed upon small branches of the Canadian pine. It is also prepared upon a long sea-grass, which is found, in great plenty, upon the rocks under water. This *caviare* is preserved in baskets of mat, and used occasionally, after being dipped in water. It has no disagreeable taste, and serves these people as a kind of winter bread. They also eat the roe of some other large fish, that has a very rancid smell and taste.

The large muscle is an essential article of their food, which is found in great abundance in the Sound. After roasting them in their shells, they

are stuck upon long wooden skewers, and taken off as they are wanted to be eaten, as they require no further preparation, though they are sometimes dipped in oil, as a sauce. The smaller shell-fish contribute to encrease the general stock, but cannot be considered as a material article of their food.

The porpoise is more common among them as food than any of the sea-animals; the flesh and rind of which they cut in large pieces, dry them as they do herrings, and eat them without farther preparation. They have also a very singular manner of preparing a sort of broth from this animal, when in its fresh state. They put some pieces of it in a wooden vessel or pail, in which there is also some water, and throw heated stones into it. This operation is repeatedly performed till the contents are supposed to be sufficiently stewed. The fresh stones are put in, and the others taken out, with a cleft stick, serving as a pair of tongs; the vessel being, for that purpose, always placed near the fire. This is a common dish among them, and seems to be a very strong nourishing food. From these, and other sea-animals, they procure oil in great abundance, which they use upon many occasions, mixed with other food, as sauce, and frequently sip it alone with a kind of scoop made of horn.

They probably feed upon other sea-animals, such as whales, seals, and sea-otters; the skins of  
the

the two latter being common amongst them : and they are furnished with implements of all sorts for the destruction of these different animals, though perhaps they may not be able, at all seasons, to catch them in great plenty. No great number of fresh skins were to be seen while we lay in the Sound.

The land-animals, at this time, appeared also to be scarce, as we saw no flesh belonging to any of them ; and, though their skins were to be had in plenty, they might, perhaps, have been procured by traffic from other tribes. It plainly appears, therefore, from a variety of circumstances, that these people are furnished with the principal part of their animal food by the sea ; if we except a few gulls, and some other birds, which they shoot with their arrows.

Their only winter vegetables seem to be the Canadian pine-branches, and sea-grass ; but, as the spring advances, they use others as they come in season. The most common of these were two sorts of liliaceous roots, of a mild sweetish taste, which are mucilaginous and eaten raw. The next is a root called *abeitu*, and has a taste resembling liquorice. Another small, sweetish root, about the thickness of *sarsaparilla*, is also eaten raw. As the season advances, they have doubtless many others which we did not see. For, though there is not the least appearance of cultivation amongst them, there are plenty of alder, gooseberry, and

currant bushes. One of the conditions, however, which they seem to require in all food, is, that it should be of the less acrid kind; for they would not touch the leek or garlic, though they sold us vast quantities of it, when they understood we liked it. They seemed, indeed, not to relish any of our food, and rejected our spirituous liquors as something disgusting and unnatural.

Small marine animals, in their fresh state, are sometimes eaten raw; though it is their ordinary practice to roast or broil their food; for they are absolute strangers to our method of boiling, as appears from their manner of preparing porpoise broth; besides, as they have only wooden vessels, it is impossible for them to perform such an operation. Their manner of eating corresponds with the nastiness of their houses and persons; for the platters and troughs, out of which they eat their food, seem never to have been washed since their original formation; the dirty remains of a former meal, being only swept away by a succeeding one. Every thing solid and tough, they tear to pieces with their hands and teeth; for, though their knives are employed in cutting off the larger portions, they have not yet endeavoured to reduce these to mouthfuls by the same means, though so much more cleanly and convenient. But they do not possess even an idea of cleanliness, and constantly eat the roots which are dug from the ground, without attempting

tempting to shake off the soil that adheres to them.

Whether they have any set time for meals, we never certainly knew; having seen them eat at all hours in their canoes. But having seen several messes of porpoise broth preparing about noon, when we went to the village, they probably make a principal meal about that time.

They have bows and arrows, spears, slings, short truncheons made of bone, and a small pick-axe, somewhat resembling the common American tomahawk. Some of the arrows are pointed with iron, and others with indented bone; the spear has usually a long point made of bone. The tomahawk is a stone of the length of seven or eight inches; one end terminating in a point, and the other fixed into a wooden handle. This handle is intended to resemble the head and neck of a human figure; the stone being fixed in the mouth so as to represent a tongue of great magnitude. To heighten the resemblance, human hair is also fixed to it. This weapon is called *taaweesb*; and they have another weapon made of stone, which they call *seeaik*, about ten or twelve inches long, having a square point.

It may be reasonably concluded that they frequently engage in close combat, from the number of their stone and other weapons; and we had very disagreeable proofs of their wars being both



frequent and bloody, from the quantity of human skulls that were offered us to sale.

The design and execution of their manufactures and mechanic arts, are more extensive and ingenious than could possibly have been expected, from the natural disposition of the people, and what little progress they had made in civilization. The flaxen and woollen garments engage their first care, as being the most material of those that may be classed under the head of manufactures. The former are fabricated from the bark of the pine-tree, beat into a mass resembling hemp. After being prepared in a proper manner, it is spread upon a stick, which is fastened to two others in an erect position. The manufacturer, who sits on her hams at this simple machine, knots it across, at the distance of about half an inch from each other, with small plaited threads. Though it cannot, by this method, be rendered so close and firm as cloth that is woven, it is sufficiently impervious to the air, and is likewise softer and more pliable.

Though their woollen garments are probably manufactured in the same manner, they have much the appearance of a woven cloth; but, the supposition of their being wrought in a loom is destroyed, by the various figures that are ingeniously inserted in them; it being very improbable that these people should be able to produce such a complex work, except immediately by  
their

their hands. They are of different qualities; some resembling our coarsest sort of blankets; and others not much inferior to our finest sort, and certainly both warmer and softer.

The wool, of which they are manufactured, seems to be produced by different animals, particularly the fox and brown lynx; that from the lynx is the finest, and nearly resembles our coarser wools in colour; but the hair, which also grows upon the animal, being intermixed with it, the appearance of it is somewhat different when wrought. The ornamental figures in these garments are disposed with great taste, and are generally of a different colour, being usually dyed either of a deep brown or a yellow; the latter of which, when new, equals in brightness, the best in our carpets.

Their fondness for carving on all their wooden articles, corresponds with their taste in working figures upon their garments. Nothing is to be seen without a kind of freeze-work, or a representation of some animal upon it; but the most general figure is that of the human face, which is frequently cut out upon birds, and the other monstrous things already mentioned; and even upon their weapons of bone and stone.

The general design of these figures conveys a sufficient knowledge of the objects they are intended to represent; though, in the carving, very little dexterity is displayed. But, in the execution of many of the masks and heads, they have shewn themselves ingenious sculptors. They preserve,

preserve, with the greatest exactness, the general character of their own faces, and finish the more minute parts with great accuracy and neatness. That these people have a strong propensity to works of this sort, is observable in a variety of particulars. Representations of human figures; birds; beasts; fish; models of their canoes, and household utensils, were found among them in very great abundance.

Having mentioned their skill in some of the imitative arts, such as working figures in their garments, and engraving, or carving them in wood; we may also add their drawing them in colours. The whole process of their whale fishery has been represented, in this manner, on the caps they wear. This, indeed, was rudely executed, but served, at least, to convince us, that, though they have not the knowledge of letters amongst them, they have a notion of representing actions, in a lasting way, exclusive of recording them in their songs and traditions. They have also other painted figures, which, perhaps, have no established significations, and are only the creation of fancy or caprice.

Though the structure of their canoes is simple, they appear well calculated for every useful purpose. The largest, which contain upwards of twenty people, are formed of a single tree. The length of many of them is forty feet, the breadth seven, and the depth three. They become gradually

dually narrower from the middle towards each end, the stern ending perpendicularly, with a knob at the top. The fore-part stretches forwards and upwards, and ends in a point or prow, much higher than the sides of the canoe, which are nearly straight. The greatest part of them are without any ornament; some have a little carving, and are studded with seals' teeth on the surface. Some have also a kind of additional prow, usually painted with the figure of some animal. They have neither seats nor any other supporters, on the inside, except some small round sticks, about the size of a walking cane, placed across, about half the depth of the canoe. They are very light, and, on account of their breadth and flatness, swim firmly, without an out-rigger, of which they are all destitute. Their paddles, which are small and light, resemble a large leaf in shape; being pointed at the bottom, broad in the middle, and gradually becoming narrower in the shaft; the whole length being about five feet. By constant use, they have acquired great dexterity in the management of these paddles; but they never make use of any sails.

For fishing and hunting, their instruments are ingeniously contrived, and completely made. They consist of nets, hooks, and lines, harpoons, gigs, and an instrument resembling an oar. The latter is about twenty feet in length, four or five inches in breadth, and of the thickness of half an inch.

inch. The edges, for about two-thirds of its length, are set with sharp bone-teeth, about two inches in length; the other third serving for a handle. With this instrument they attack herrings and sardines, and such other fish as come in shoals. It is struck into the shoal, and the fish are taken either upon, or between the teeth. Their hooks, which are made of bone and wood, display no great ingenuity; but the harpoon, which is used in striking whales, and other sea-animals, manifests a great extent of contrivance. It consists of a piece of bone, formed into two barbs, in which the oval blade of a large muscle shell, and the point of the instrument, is fixed. Two or three fathoms of rope is fastened to this harpoon, and, in throwing it, they use a shaft of about fifteen feet long, to which the rope is fastened; to one end of which the harpoon is fixed so as to leave the shaft floating, as a buoy upon the water, when the animal is struck with the harpoon.

We are strangers to the manner of their catching or killing land-animals, but, it is probable, that they shoot the smaller sorts with their arrows; and encounter bears, wolves, and foxes, with their spears. They have several sorts of nets, which are perhaps applied to that purpose; it being customary for them to throw them over their heads, to signify their use, when they offered them for sale. Sometimes they decoy animals, by disguising themselves with a skin, and running

running upon all fours, in which they are remarkably nimble; making, at the same time, a kind of noise, or neighing. The masks, or carved heads, as well as the dried heads of different animals, are used upon these occasions.

Every thing of the rope kind, which they use in making their various articles, is formed either from thongs of skins, and sinews of animals, or from the flaxen substance, of which they manufacture their mantles. The sinews were sometimes so remarkable long, that it was hardly possible they could have belonged to any other animal than the whale. The same conjecture may be hazarded with regard to the bones, of which they make their instruments and weapons.

The assistance they receive from iron-tools, contributes to their dexterity in wooden performances. Their implements are almost wholly made of iron; at least, we saw but one chissel that was not made of that metal, and that was only of bone. The knife and the chissel are the principal forms that iron assumes amongst them. The chissel consists of a flat long piece, fastened into a wooden handle. A stone is their mallet, and a bit of fish-skin their polisher. Some of these chissels were nine or ten inches in length, and three or four in breadth; but they were, in general, considerably smaller.

Some of their knives are very large, and their blades are crooked; the edge being on the back

or

or convex part. What we have seen among them, were about the breadth and thickness of an iron-hoop ; and their singular form sufficiently proves that they are not of European make. These iron-tools are sharpened upon a coarse slate whetstone, and the whole instrument is kept continually bright.

Iron is called by the natives *seekemaile*, a name which they also give to tin, and other white metals. It being so common among these people, we were anxious to discover how it could be conveyed to them. As soon as we arrived in the Sound we perceived that they had a knowledge of traffic, and an inclination to pursue it ; and we were afterwards convinced that they had not acquired this knowledge from a cursory interview with any strangers, but it seemed habitual to them, and was a practice in which they were well skilled.

With whom they carry on this traffic, we cannot ascertain ; for, though we saw several articles of European manufacture, or such, at least, as had been derived from some civilized nation, such as brass and iron, it does not certainly follow that they were received immediately from these nations. For we never could obtain the least information of their having seen ships, like ours, before, nor of their having been engaged in commerce with such people. Many circumstances corroborate to prove this beyond a doubt. On  
our

our arrival, they were earnest in their enquiries, whether we meant to settle amongst them, and whether we were friendly visitors; informing us, at the same time, that they freely gave us wood and water from motives of friendship.

This sufficiently proves, that they considered themselves as proprietors of the place, and dreaded no superiority: for it would have been an unnatural enquiry, if any ships had been here before, and had supplied themselves with wood and water, and then departed; for they might then reasonably expect, that we should do the same. It must be admitted, indeed, that they exhibited no marks of surprize at beholding our ships; but this may, with great propriety, be attributed to their natural indolence of temper, and their wanting a thirst of curiosity. They were never startled at the report of a musquet, till they, one day, shewed us that their hide-dresses were impetrable to their spears and arrows; when one of our people shot a musquet ball through one of them that had been six times folded. Their astonishment at this, plainly indicated their ignorance of the effect of fire-arms. This was afterwards very frequently confirmed, when we used them to shoot birds, at which they appeared greatly confounded. And our explanation of the piece, together with the nature of its operation, with the aid of shot and ball, struck them so forcibly



forcibly, as to convince us of their having no previous ideas on this matter.

Though some account of a voyage to this coast, by the Spaniards, in 1774, or 1775, had arrived in England before we sailed, the circumstances just mentioned sufficiently prove, that these ships had never been at Nootka \*. It was also evident, that iron would not have been in so many hands, nor would the use of it have been so well known, if they had so lately obtained the first knowledge of it.

From their general use of this metal, it probably comes from some constant source, in the way of traffic, and they have perhaps been long supplied with it; for they use their tools with as much dexterity as the longest practice can acquire. The most natural conjecture, therefore, is, that they trade for their iron with other Indian tribes, who may have some communication with European settlements upon that continent, or receive it through several intermediate nations. By the same means they probably obtain their brass and copper.

Not only the rude materials, but some manufactured articles seem to find their way hither. The brass ornaments for noses are made in so masterly a manner, that the Indians cannot be

\* It has since appeared, that they were not within two degrees of Nootka, and probably the inhabitants of that place never heard of these Spanish ships.

supposed capable of fabricating them. We are certain, that the materials are European, as all the American tribes are ignorant of the method of making brass; though copper has been frequently met with, and, from its ductility, might easily be fashioned into any shape, and polished. If such articles are not used by our traders to Hudson's Bay and Canada, in their traffic with the natives, they must have been introduced at Nootka from Mexico; whence, it is probable, the two silver table spoons were originally derived.

Little knowledge can we be supposed to have acquired of the political and religious institutions established among these people. We discovered, however, that there were such men as chiefs, distinguished by the title of *Acweek*, to whom the others are, in some degree, subordinate. But the authority of each of these great men, seems to extend no farther than to his own family, who acknowledge him as their head. As they were not all elderly men, it is possible this title may be hereditary.

Nothing that we saw could give us any insight into their notions of religion, except the figures already mentioned, called *Klumma*. These, perhaps, were idols; but, as the word *acweek* was frequently mentioned when they spoke of them, we may suppose them to be the images of some of their ancestors, whose memories they venerate.

This, however, is all conjecture, for we could receive no information concerning them; knowing little more of their language than to enable us to ask the names of things, and being incapable of holding any conversation with the natives, relative to their traditions, or their institutions.

Their language is neither harsh nor disagreeable, farther than proceeds from their pronouncing the *k* and *b* with less softness than we do. As to the composition of their language, we are enabled to say but little. It may, however, be inferred, from their slow and distinct method of speaking, that it has few prepositions or conjunctions, and is destitute of even a single interjection to express surprize or admiration. The affinity it may bear to other languages, we have not been able sufficiently to trace, not having proper specimens to compare it with; but, from the few Mexican words we have procured, there is an obvious agreement, throughout the language, in the frequent terminations of the words in *l*, *l'*, or *z*.

The word *wakash* was frequently in the mouths of the people of Nootka. It seemed to express approbation, applause, and friendship. Whenever they appeared to be pleased or satisfied at any sight or occurrence, they would call out *wakash!* *wakash!*—It is worthy of remark, that as these people so essentially differ from the na-

tives of the islands in the Pacific Ocean, in their persons, customs, and language, we cannot suppose their respective progenitors to have belonged to the same tribe, when they emigrated into those places where we now find their descendants.

---

#### C H A P. IV.

*A Storm—The Resolution springs a Leak—Progress of the Ships along the North-American Coast—An Inlet named Cross Sound—Beering's Bay—Cape Suckling—Account of Kay's Island—Our Ships anchor near Cape Hinchingbroke—The Natives visit us—Their Fondness for Beads and Iron—Their daring Attempt to carry off one of our Boats—They also attempt to plunder the Discovery—Progress up the Sound—Mr. Gore and the Master sent to examine its Extent—Montague Island—The Ships leave the Sound.*

WE have already mentioned, that we put to sea, in the evening of the 26th of April, with manifest indications of an approaching storm; and these signs did not deceive us. We had scarce sailed out of the Sound, when the

wind shifted from north-east to south-east by east, and blew a strong gale, with squalls and rain, the sky being at the same time uncommonly dark. Being apprehensive of the winds veering more to the south, which would expose us to the danger of a lee-shore, we got the tacks on board, and made all the sail we could to the south-west. It fortunately happened, that the wind veered no further towards the south, than south-east; so that, early the next morning, we were entirely clear of the coast. Captain Clerke's ship being at some distance astern, the Commodore brought to, till she came up, and then both vessels steered a north-westerly course. The wind blew with great violence, and the weather was thick and hazy. Between one and two o'clock in the afternoon, there was a perfect hurricane; so that the Commodore deemed it exceedingly dangerous to run any longer before it: he therefore brought the ships to, with their heads to the south. In this situation, the Resolution sprung a leak, in her starboard quarter, which, at first, alarmed us extremely; but, after the water was baled out, which kept us employed till midnight, it was kept under by means of one pump. The wind having, in the evening, veered to the southward, its fury in some measure abated; upon which we stretched to the west; but about eleven, the gale again increased, and continued

till

till five the next morning, when the storm began to moderate.

The weather now clearing up, we were able to see several leagues around us, and steered more to the north. At noon, our longitude was  $229^{\circ} 26'$  east; and our latitude,  $50^{\circ} 1'$  north. We now steered north-west by north, with a fresh gale, and fair weather. But, towards the evening, the wind again blew hard, with squalls and rain. With this weather, we continued the same course till the 30th, when we steered north by west, intending to make the land. Captain Cook regretted that he could not do it sooner, as we were now passing the spot where the pretended strait of Admiral de Fonte has been placed by geographers. Though the Captain gave no credit to such vague and improbable stories, he was desirous of keeping the coast of America aboard, that this point might be cleared up beyond dispute. But he considered, that it would have been very imprudent to have engaged with the land while the weather was so tempestuous, or to have lost the advantage of a fair wind, by waiting for less stormy weather. This day, at twelve o'clock, our latitude was  $53^{\circ} 22'$  north, and our longitude  $225^{\circ} 14'$  east.

On Friday, the 1st of May, not seeing land, we steered to the north-east, having a fresh breeze at south-south-east and south, with squalls and showers of hail and rain. About seven o'clock

in the evening, we descried the land, at the distance of twelve or fourteen leagues. At four the next morning, the coast was seen from south-east to north by west, the nearest part of it being five or six leagues distant. At this time, the northern point of an inlet, or, at least, what appeared to be one, bore east by south; and from it to the northward, there seemed to be many bays and harbours along the coast. At six o'clock, making a nearer approach to the land, we steered north-west by north, this being the direction of the coast; and, between eleven and twelve, we passed a cluster of little islands situate near the continent, to the northward of the southern point of an extensive bay. An arm of this bay seemed to extend in towards the north, behind a round lofty mountain that stands between it and the sea. To this mountain Captain Cook gave the name of Mount Edgecumbe; and the point of land projecting from it, he called Cape Edgecumbe. The latitude of this cape is  $57^{\circ} 3'$  north, and its longitude  $224^{\circ} 7'$  east. The land, except in some parts close to the sea, is of a considerable height, abounding with hills. Mount Edgecumbe, which far out-tops all the rest, was entirely covered with snow, as were also the other elevated hills; but the lower ones, and the flatter spots near the sea, were destitute of it, and covered with wood.

In our progress to the northward, we found that the coast from Cape Edgecumbe trended to the north and north-east for six or seven leagues, and there formed a spacious bay. There being some islands in the entrance of this bay, the Commodore named it the Bay of Islands. It seemed to branch out into several arms, one of which turned towards the south, and may perhaps communicate with the bay on the eastern side of Cape Edgecumbe, and thus render the land of that cape an island. On the 3d, at half an hour after four in the morning, Mount Edgecumbe bore south  $54^{\circ}$  east, a large inlet, north  $50^{\circ}$  east; and the most advanced point of land towards the north-west, lying under a very lofty peaked mountain, which obtained the appellation of Mount Fair-Weather, bore north  $32^{\circ}$  west. The inlet we named Cross Sound, having first observed it on the day so marked in our calendar. The south eastern point of this Sound is an elevated promontory, which we distinguished by the name of Cross Cape. To the point under the above-mentioned peaked mountain, we gave the name of Cape Fair-Weather. At noon, this cape was distant twelve or thirteen leagues.

We had now light breezes from the north-west, which continued several days. We steered to the south-west, and west-south-west, till the morning of the 4th, when we tacked and stood towards the shore. At twelve o'clock, Mount



Fair-Weather bore north  $63^{\circ}$  east, and the shore under it was about a dozen leagues distant. This mount is the highest of a chain or ridge of mountains, that rise at the north-western entrance of Cross Sound, and extend towards the north-west, parallel with the coast. These mountains were covered with snow, from the highest summit down to the sea-coast; except a few places, where we could discern trees that seemed to rise, as it were, from the sea. About five o'clock in the afternoon, the top of a high mountain appeared above the horizon, bearing north  $26^{\circ}$  west, and, as we afterwards found, near forty leagues distant. We supposed that it was the mount St. Elias, of Commodore Beering. We saw, in the course of this day, several porpoises, seals, and whales; also great numbers of gulls, and many flocks of birds which had a black circle about the head, and a black band on the tip of the tail and upper part of the wings, the rest being white below and blueish above. We likewise observed a brownish duck, with a blackish or dark-blue head and neck.

As we had light winds, with occasional calms, we proceeded but slowly. On the 6th, at mid-day, the nearest land was at the distance of about eight leagues. In a north-easterly direction, there appeared to be a bay, and an island near its southern point, covered with wood. This is probably the place where Beering anchored. Southward

ward of the bay (which Captain Cook named Beering's Bay, in honour of its discoverer) the ridge of mountains, already mentioned, is interrupted by a plain of several leagues in extent, beyond which the sight was unbounded. In the afternoon, we sounded, and found a muddy bottom at the depth of about seventy fathoms. Soon afterwards, having a light northerly breeze, we steered to the westward; and at noon, the next day, we were at the distance of four or five leagues from the shore. From this station we could perceive a bay under a high land, with low woodland on each side of it. We now found that the coast trended considerably to the west; and as we had but little wind, and that chiefly from the westward, we made a slow progress. On the 9th, about noon, Mount St. Elias bore north  $30^{\circ}$  east, at the distance of nineteen leagues. This mountain stands twelve leagues inland, in the longitude of  $219^{\circ}$  east, and in the latitude of  $60^{\circ} 27'$  north. It belongs to a ridge of very lofty mountains, which may be reckoned a kind of continuation of the former, being separated from them only by the plain before-mentioned.

On Sunday the 10th, at twelve o'clock, we were about three leagues distant from the coast of the continent, which extended from east half north, to north-west half west. To the westward of the latter direction was an island, at the distance of six leagues. A point, which the Commodore

modore named Cape Suckling, projects towards the north-eastern end of this island. The extremity of the cape is low; but, within it, stands a hill of considerable height, which is divided from the mountains by low land; so that the cape, at a distance, has an insular appearance. On the north side of Cape Suckling is a bay, which seemed to be extensive, and to be sheltered from most winds. Captain Cook had some thoughts of repairing to this bay, in order to stop the leak of his ship, all our endeavours to effect that purpose at sea having proved fruitless. We therefore steered for the cape; but, having only variable light breezes, we advanced towards it slowly. Before night, however, we had approached near enough to see some low land projecting from the cape to the north-west; we also observed some little islands in the bay, and several elevated rocks between the cape and the north-eastern extremity of the island. As there appeared to be a passage on each side of these rocks, we continued steering thither the whole night. Early the next morning, the wind shifted from north-east to north. This being against us, the Commodore relinquished his design of going into the bay, and bore up for the west end of the island. There being a calm about ten o'clock, he embarked in a boat, and landed on the island, with a view of seeing what lay on the other side; but finding that the hills were at a greater distance  
than

than he expected, and that the way was woody and steep, he laid aside that intention. On a small eminence near the shore, he left, at the foot of a tree, a bottle containing a paper, on which the names of our ships, and the date of our discovery, were inscribed: he also inclosed two silver two-penny pieces of English coin, which, with many others, had been furnished him by Dr. Kaye, now Dean of Lincoln; and, in testimony of his esteem for that gentleman, he distinguished the island by the name of Kaye's Island.

This isle does not exceed twelve leagues in length, and its breadth is not above a league and a half in any part of it. The south-west point, whose latitude is  $59^{\circ} 49'$  north, and longitude  $216^{\circ} 58'$  east, is a naked rock, considerably elevated above the land within it. There is also a high rock lying off it, which, when seen in some particular directions, has the appearance of a ruinous castle. The island terminates, towards the sea, in bare sloping cliffs, with a beach consisting of large pebbles, intermixed in some places with a clayey sand. The cliffs are composed of a blueish stone or rock, and are, except in a few parts, in a soft or mouldering state. Some parts of the shore are interrupted by small vallies and gullies, in each of which a rivulet or torrent rushes down with a considerable degree of impetuosity; though, perhaps, only furnished from the snow, and lasting no longer than till the whole  
is

is dissolved. These vallies are filled with pine-trees; and they also abound in other parts of the island, which, indeed, is covered, as it were, with a broad girdle of wood. The trees, however, are far from being of an extraordinary growth; few of them seeming to be larger than what a person might grasp round with his arms, and their general height being forty or fifty feet; so that they would be of no great service for shipping, except as materials for making top gallant-masts, and other small things. The pine-trees appeared to be all of one species; and neither the Canadian pine, nor cypress, was to be seen.

Upon the edges of the cliffs, the surface was covered with a kind of turf, about six inches thick, apparently composed of the common moss; and the upper part of the island had nearly the same appearance in point of colour; but that which covered it, whatever it was, seemed to be thicker. Among the trees were some currant and hawberry bushes, a yellow-flowered violet, and the leaves of other plants not yet in flower, particularly one which was supposed by Mr. Anderson to be the *heracleum* of Linnæus.

A crow was seen flying about the wood; two or three white headed eagles, like those of Nootka, were also observed; besides another species equally large, which had a white breast. The Commodore likewise saw, in his passage from the ship to the shore, a number of fowls sitting on  
the

the water; or flying about; the principal of which were gulls, burres, shags, ducks, or large petrels, divers, and quebrantahueffes. The divers were of two sorts; one very large, whose colour was black, with a white belly and breast; the other of a smaller size, with a longer and more pointed bill. The ducks were also of two species; one brownish, with a dark-blue or blackish head and neck; the other smaller, and of a dirty black colour. The shags were large and black, having a white spot behind the wings. The gulls were of the common sort, flying in flocks. There was also a single bird flying about, apparently of the gull kind, whose colour was a snowy white, with some black along part of the upper side of its wings. At the place where our party landed, a fox came from the verge of the wood, and eyeing them with little emotion, walked leisurely on without manifesting any signs of fear. He was not of a large size, and his colour was a reddish yellow. Two or three small seals were likewise seen near the shore; but no traces were discovered of inhabitants having ever been in the island.

Captain Cook, with those who accompanied him, returned on board in the afternoon, and, with a light breeze from the east, steered for the south-west side of the island, which we got round by eight o'clock in the evening: we then stood for the westernmost land that was now in sight.

At

At the north-east end of Kaye's Island stands another island, extending north-west and south-east about nine milès, to within the same distance of the north-western boundary of the bay mentioned before, to which the appellation of Comptroller's Bay was given. Early the next morning Kaye's Island was still in sight, bearing east by south; and, at this time, we were at the distance of four or five leagues from the main. At noon, the eastern point of a spacious inlet bore west-north-west, about three leagues distant. From Comptroller's Bay to this point, which the Commodore named Cape Flinchingbroke, the direction of the coast is nearly east and west. Beyond this, it appeared to incline towards the south; a direction very different from that which is marked out in the modern charts, founded on the late discoveries of the Russians; insomuch that we had some reason to expect, that we should find, through the inlet before us, a passage to the north, and that the land to the west and south-west was a group of islands. The wind was now south-easterly, and we were menaced with a fog and a storm; and Captain Cook was desirous of getting into some place to stop the leak, before we had another gale to encounter. We therefore steered for the inlet, which we had no sooner reached, than the weather became exceedingly foggy, and it was deemed necessary that the ships should be secured in some place or other, till the sky should clear

clear up. With this view we hauled close under Cape Hinchinbroke, and cast anchor before a small cove, over a clayey bottom, in eight fathoms water, at the distance of about two furlongs from the shore.

Soon after we had anchored, the boats were hoisted out, some to fish, and others to sound. The seine, at the same time, was drawn in the cove; but without success, as it was torn. At intervals the fog cleared away, and gave us a view of the neighbouring land. The cape was one league distant; the western point of the inlet, five leagues; and the land on that side extended to west by north. Between this point and north-west by west, we could discern no land. The most westerly point we had in view on the north shore, was at the distance of two leagues. Between this point, and the shore under which our ships now lay at anchor, is a bay about three leagues deep, on the south-eastern side of which are several coves; and, in the middle, stand some rocky islands.

Mr. Gore was dispatched in a boat to these islands, in order to shoot some birds that might serve for food. He had scarcely reached them, when about twenty natives appeared, in two large canoes; upon which he returned to the ships, and they followed him. They were unwilling, however, to venture along-side, but kept at a little distance, shouting aloud, and clapping and  
extend-



extending their arms alternately. They then began a kind of song, much after the manner of the inhabitants of King George's or Nootka Sound. Their heads were strewed with feathers, and one of them held out a white garment, which we supposed was intended as a token of friendship; while another, for near a quarter of an hour, stood up in the canoe, entirely naked, with his arms extended like a cross, and motionless. Their canoes were constructed upon a different plan from those of Nootka. The frame consisted of slender laths; and the outside was formed of the skins of seals, or other animals of a similar kind. Though we returned their signs of amity, and endeavoured, by the most expressive gestures, to encourage them to come along-side, we were unable to prevail upon them. Though some of our people repeated several of the most common words of the language of Nootka, such as *makook* and *seekemaité*, they did not appear to understand them. After they had received some presents that were thrown to them, they retired towards the shore, intimating, by signs, that they would pay us another visit the next morning. Two of them, however, came off to us in the night, each in a small canoe; hoping, perhaps, that they might find us all asleep, and might have an opportunity of pilfering; for they went away as soon as they perceived themselves discovered.

The

The wind, during the night, blew hard and in squalls, with rain, and thick hazy weather. The next morning, about ten, the wind becoming more moderate, and the weather in some measure clearing up, we got up our anchors and made sail, in order to search for some convenient place where we might stop the leak, as our present situation was too much exposed for that purpose. Captain Cook at first proposed to have gone up the bay before which our ships had anchored; but he was afterwards induced by the clearness of the weather, to steer towards the north, further up the great inlet. After we had passed the north-west point of the above mentioned bay, we found that the coast, on that side, inclined to the eastward. We did not follow it, but proceeded on our course to the northward, for a point of land which we observed in that direction.

The Americans who had visited us the preceding day, came off again in the morning, in five or six canoes; but as they did not come till after we were under sail, they were unable to reach the ships, though they followed us for a considerable time. In the afternoon, before two o'clock, the unfavourable weather returned, with so thick a haze, that we could discern no other land but the point just mentioned, off which we arrived between four and five o'clock; and found it to be a little island, situate at the distance of

about two miles from the neighbouring coast, being a point of land, on the eastern side of which we discovered an excellent bay, or rather harbour. To this we plied up, while the wind blew in very hard squalls, accompanied with rain. Though, at some intervals, we could see land in every direction, yet, in general, there was so great a fog, that we could only perceive the shores of the bay for which we were now steering. In passing the island, we found a muddy bottom, at the depth of twenty-six fathoms. Not long after, we found sixty and seventy fathoms, over a rocky bottom; and, in the entrance of the bay, the depth of water was from thirty to six fathoms. At length, about eight o'clock, we were obliged, by the violence of the squalls, to cast anchor in thirteen fathoms water, before we had proceeded so far into the bay as the Commodore intended; but we thought ourselves fortunate in having the ships already secured; for the night was extremely tempestuous.

Though the weather was so turbulent, the natives were not deterred from paying us a visit. Three of them came off in two canoes; two men in one, and one in the other, being the number that each canoe could carry. For they were constructed nearly in the same manner with those of the Esquimaux, except that in one of them were two holes for two persons to sit in, and in the other but one. These men had each a stick,

of

of the length of about three feet, with the large feathers, or wings of birds, fastened to it. These they frequently held up to us, probably as tokens of peace. The treatment these three received, induced many others to visit us, between one and two o'clock the following morning, in both great and small canoes. Some of them ventured on board the *Resolution*, though not before some of our people had stepped into their boats. Among those who came on board, was a middle-aged man, who, as we afterwards found, was the chief. His dress was made of the skin of the sea-otter, and he had on his head such a cap as is worn by the inhabitants of Nootka, embellished with sky-blue glass beads. He appeared to value these much more than our white glass beads. Any kind of beads, however, seemed to be in high estimation among these people, who readily gave in exchange for them whatever they had, even their fine sea-otter skins.

They were very desirous of iron; but absolutely rejected small bits, and wanted pieces nine or ten inches long at least, and of the breadth of three or four fingers. They obtained but little of this commodity from us, as, by this time, it was become rather scarce. The points of some of their spears were of this metal; others were of copper; and a few were of bone; of which last the points of their arrows, darts, &c. were formed.

The chief could not be prevailed upon to venture below the upper deck, nor did he and his companions continue long on board. While they were with us, it was necessary to watch them narrowly, as they soon manifested an inclination for thieving. At length, when they had been three or four hours along-side the Resolution, they all quitted her, and repaired to the Discovery, which ship none of them had before been on board of, except one man, who came from her at this very time, and immediately returned to her, in company with the others. As soon as they had departed from our ship, Captain Cook dispatched a boat to sound the head of the bay; for, as the wind was moderate at present, he had an intention of laying the ship ashore, if a proper place could be found for the process of stopping the leak. Soon afterwards all the Americans quitted the Discovery, and made their way towards our boat that was employed in sounding. The officer who was in her, observing their approach, returned to the ship, and all the canoes followed him. The crew of the boat had no sooner repaired on board, leaving in her, by way of guard, two of their number, than several of the natives stepped into her; some of whom presented their spears before the two men, while others loosed the rope by which she was fastened to the ship, and the rest were so daring as to attempt to tow her away. But the moment they  
saw

saw that we were preparing to oppose them, they let her go, stepped out of her into their own boats, and made signs to us to persuade us to lay down our arms, being, to all appearance, perfectly unconcerned.

This attempt, though a very bold one, was scarce equal to what they had meditated on board Captain Clerke's ship. The man whom we mentioned before as having conducted his countrymen from the Resolution to the Discovery, had first been on board of the latter; where looking down all the hatchways, and observing no one except the officer of the watch, and one or two others, he doubtless imagined that she might be plundered with ease, particularly as she was stationed at some distance from the Resolution. It was unquestionably with this intent, that the natives went off to her. Several of them went on board without the least ceremony, and drawing their knives, made signs to the officer, and the other people upon deck, to keep off, and began to search for plunder. The first thing they laid hold of was the rudder of one of our boats, which they immediately threw overboard to those of their party who had continued in the canoes. But before they had time to find another object that struck their fancy, the ship's crew were alarmed, and many of them, armed with cutlasses, came upon deck. On observing this, the plunderers all sneaked off into their canoes, with evident

marks of indifference. It was at this time, that our boat was occupied in founding, as we have already mentioned; and the natives, without delay, proceeded towards her, after the disappointment they had met with at the Discovery. Their visiting us so early in the morning was undoubtedly with a view of plundering, on a supposition that they should find all our people asleep.

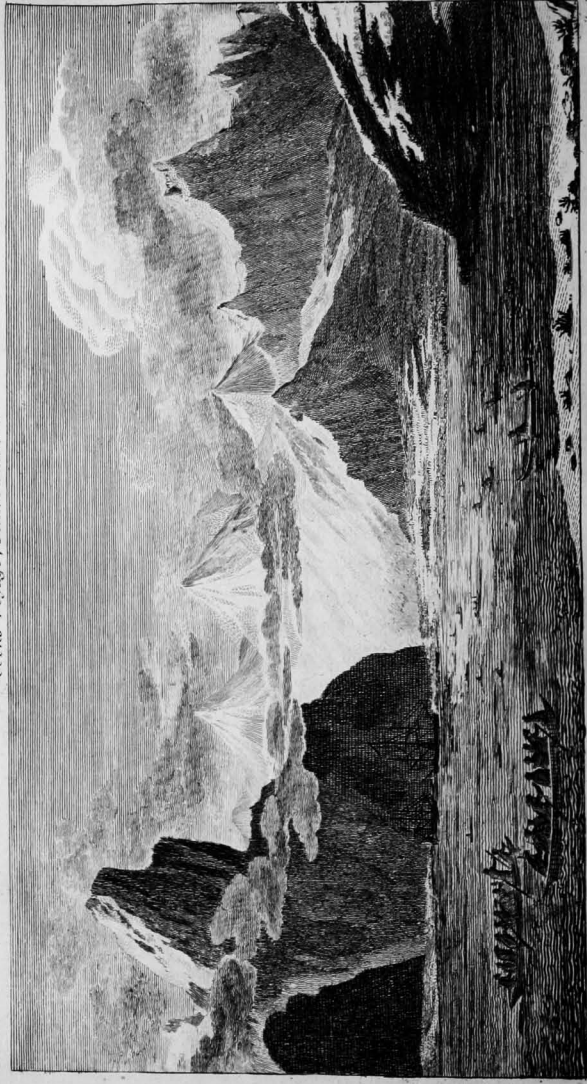
From the circumstances above related, it may reasonably be interred, that these people are not acquainted with fire-arms. For, had they known any thing of their effect, they would by no means have ventured to attempt carrying off a boat from under a ship's guns, in the face of upwards of a hundred men; for most of the Resolution's people were looking at them, at the very instant of their making the attempt. However, we left them as ignorant, in this particular, as we found them; for they neither saw nor heard a musquet fired, except at birds.

As we were on the point of weighing anchor, in order to proceed further up the bay, the wind began to blow as violently as before, and was attended with rain; insomuch that we were obliged to bear away the cable again, and lie fast. In the evening, perceiving that the gale did not abate, and thinking that it might be some time before an opportunity of getting higher up presented itself, the Commodore was determined to heel the ship in our present station; and, with  
that





*Cook's Voyage, Octavo Edition.*



W. H. W. 1842.

A VIEW OF SNUG CORNER COVE IN PRINCE WILLIAMS SOUND.

that view, caused her to be moored with a kedge-anchor and hawser. One of the sailors, in heaving the anchor out of the boat, was carried overboard by the buoy-rope, and accompanied the anchor to the bottom. In this very hazardous situation, he had sufficient presence of mind to disengage himself, and come up to the surface of the water, where he was immediately taken up, with a dangerous fracture in one of his legs. Early the following morning, we heeled the ship, in order to stop the leak, which, on ripping off the sheathing, was found to be in the seams. While the carpenters were employed in this business, others of our people filled the water-casks at a stream not far from our station. The wind had, by this time, considerably abated; but the weather was hazy, with rain. The Americans paid us another visit this morning: those who came off first, were in small canoes; others arrived afterwards in large ones. In one of these great canoes were twenty women and one man, besides several children.

On Saturday the 16th, towards the evening, the weather cleared up, and we then found ourselves encompassed with land. Our station was on the eastern side of the Sound, in a place distinguished by the appellation of Snug Corner Bay. Captain Cook, accompanied by some of his officers, went to take a survey of the head of it; and they found that it was sheltered from all winds,

and had a muddy bottom at the depth of from seven to three fathoms. The land near the shore is low; partly wooded, and partly clear. The clear ground was covered with snow, but very little remained in the woods. The summits of the hills in the neighbourhood were covered with wood; but those that were at a greater distance inland, had the appearance of naked rocks, involved in snow.

The leak of the Resolution being at length stopped, we weighed anchor on the 17<sup>th</sup>, at four in the morning, and steered a north-west course, with a gentle breeze at east-north-east. Soon after we had made sail, the Americans visited us again, seemingly with no other view than to gratify their curiosity, for they did not enter into any traffic with us. When we had reached the north-western point of the arm wherein we had anchored, we observed that the flood-tide came into the inlet, by the same channel through which we had entered. This circumstance did not much contribute to the probability of a passage to the north through the inlet, though it did not make entirely against it. After we had passed the point just mentioned, we met with much foul ground, and many sunken rocks. The wind now failed us, and was succeeded by calms and variable light airs, so that we had some difficulty in extricating ourselves from the danger that threatened us. At last, however, about one o'clock, we cast anchor

chor in about thirteen fathoms water, under the eastern shore, about four leagues to the northward of our last station. Though the weather, in the morning, had been very hazy, it cleared up afterwards, so as to afford us a distinct view of all the surrounding land, particularly towards the north, where it appeared to close. This gave us but little hope of meeting with a passage that way. That he might be enabled to form a better judgment, Captain Cook sent Mr. Gore, with two armed boats, to examine the northern arm; and at the same time dispatched the Master, with two other boats, to survey another arm that seemed to incline towards the east. Both of them returned at night. The Master informed the Commodore, that the arm, to which he had been sent, communicated with that we had last quitted, and that one side of it was formed by a cluster of islands. Mr. Gore reported, that he had seen the entrance of an arm, which, he thought, extended a very considerable way to the north eastward, and by which a passage might probably be found. On the other hand, Mr. Roberts, one of the Mates, who had accompanied Mr. Gore on this occasion, gave it as his opinion, that they saw the head of this arm. The variation of these two opinions, and the circumstance before-mentioned of the flood-tide entering the inlet from the southward, rendered the existence of a passage this way extremely uncertain.

tain. Captain Cook therefore determined to employ no more time in seeking a passage in a place that afforded so small a prospect of success, particularly as the wind was now become favourable for getting out to sea.

The next morning, about three o'clock, we weighed, and made sail to the southward down the inlet, with a light northerly breeze. We met with the same broken ground as on the preceding day, but soon extricated ourselves from it. We were enabled to shorten our way out to sea, by discovering another passage into this inlet, to the south-west of that by which we entered. It is separated from the other, by an island that extends eighteen leagues in the direction of south-west and north east, to which Captain Cook gave the appellation of Montagu Island.

There are several islands in this south-western channel. Those which are situate in the entrance, next the open sea, are elevated and rocky. Those that are within, are low; and as they were totally free from snow, and covered with wood and verdure, they were, for this reason, denominated Green Islands.

The wind, at two o'clock in the afternoon, veered to the south-west, and south west by south, which subjected us to the necessity of plying. We first stretched over to within the distance of two miles of the eastern shore, and tacked in about

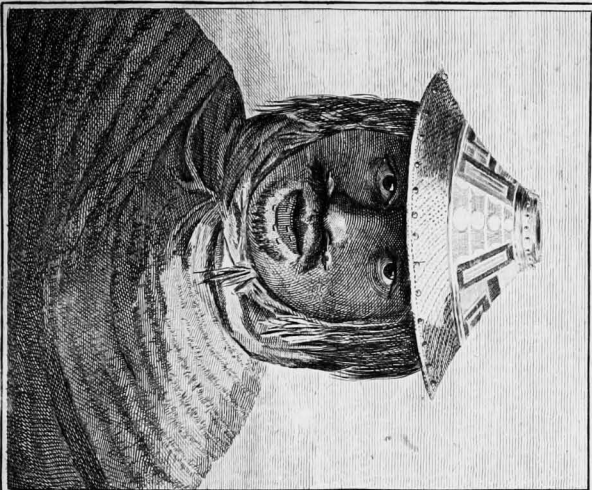
fifty.

fifty-three fathoms. As we stood back to Montagu Island, we discovered a ledge of rocks, some under water, and others above the surface. We afterwards met with some others towards the middle of the channel. These rocks rendering it unsafe to ply during the night, we spent it in standing off and on, under Montagu Island; for the depth of water was so great, that we could not cast anchor. The next morning, at break of day, we steered for the channel between the Green Islands and Montagu Island, which is about two leagues and an half in breadth. The wind was inconsiderable the whole day; and, about eight in the evening, we had a perfect calm; when we let go our anchors at the depth of twenty-one fathoms, over a muddy bottom, about the distance of two miles from Montagu Island. After the calm had continued till ten o'clock the succeeding morning, a slight breeze sprung up from the north, with which we again weighed and made sail. Having got out into the open sea by six in the evening, we discovered that the coast trended west by south, as far as the eye could possibly reach.

## C H A P. V.

*Extent of Prince William's Sound—The Persons of its Inhabitants described—Their Dress—Remarkable Custom of making an Incision in the Underlip—Their various Ornaments—Canoes—Weapons—Armour—Domestic Utensils—Their Skill in all manual Works—Their Food—A Specimen of their Language—Quadrupeds—Birds—Fish—Trees—Conjectures whence they procure Beads and Iron.*

THE inlet which we had now quitted, was distinguished by Captain Cook with the name of Prince William's Sound. From what we saw of it, it seems to occupy, at least, one degree and an half of latitude, and two degrees of longitude, exclusive of the branches or arms, with whose extent we are unacquainted. The natives whom we saw, were in general of a middling stature, though many of them were under it. They were square, or strong-chested, with short thick necks, and large broad visages, which were, for the most part, rather flat. The most disproportioned part of their body appeared to be their heads, which were of great magnitude. Their teeth were of a tolerable whiteness, broad, well set, and equal in size. Their noses had full, round points, turned up at the tip; and their



*MAYNARD WILLIAM OF GREENE WILLIAMS SON.*





their eyes, though not small, were scarcely proportioned to the largeness of their faces. They had black hair, which was strong, straight, and thick. Their beards were, in general, thin, or deficient; but the hairs growing about the lips of those who have them, were bristly or stiff, and often of a brownish colour; and some of the elderly men had large, thick, straight beards.

Though, for the most part, they agree in the formation of their persons, and the largeness of their heads, the variety in their features is considerable. Very few, however, can be said to be handsome, though their countenance usually indicates frankness, vivacity, and good-nature; and yet some of them shewed a reserve and sullenness in their aspect. The faces of some of the women are agreeable; and many of them, but principally the younger ones, may easily be distinguished from the other sex, by the superior delicacy of their features. The complexion of some of the females, and of the children, is white, without any mixture of red. Many of the men, whom we saw naked, had rather a swarthy cast, which was scarcely the effect of any stain, as it is not their custom to paint their bodies.

The men, women, and children of this Sound, are all clothed in the same manner. Their ordinary dress is a sort of close frock, or rather robe, which sometimes reaches only to the knees, but generally down to the ankles. It has, at the upper

per part, a hole just sufficient to admit the head, with sleeves reaching to the wrist. These frocks are composed of the skins of various animals, such as the grey fox, racoon, pine-martin, sea-otter, seal, &c. and they are commonly worn with the hairy side outwards. Some of the natives have their frocks made of the skins of fowls, with only the down left on them, which they glue upon other substances: we also saw one or two woollen garments, resembling those of the inhabitants of King George's Sound. At the seams, where the different skins are sewed together, they are usually adorned with fringes or tassels of narrow thongs, cut out of the same skins. There is a sort of cape or collar to a few of them, and some have a hood; but the other is the most customary form, and appears to constitute their whole dress in fair weather. They put over this, when it is rainy, another frock, made with some degree of ingenuity from the intestines of whales, or of some other large animal, prepared with such skill, as to resemble, in a great measure, our gold-beaters' leaf. It is formed so as to be drawn tight round the neck; and its sleeves extend down to the wrist, round which they are fastened with a string. When they are in their canoes, they draw the skirts of this frock over the rim of the hole in which they sit, so that the water is prevented from entering. At the same time it keeps the men dry upwards,  
for

for no water can penetrate through it. It is apt to crack or break, if it is not constantly kept moist. This frock, as well as the common one made of skins, is nearly similar to the dress of the natives of Greenland, as described by Crantz\*.

Though the inhabitants of this inlet, in general, do not cover their legs or feet, yet some of them wear a kind of skin stockings, reaching half-way up their thighs. Few of them are without mittens for their hands, formed from the skins of a bear's paws. Those who wear any thing on their heads, resembled, in this particular, the people of Nootka, having high truncated conical caps, composed of straw, and sometimes of wood.

The hair of the men is commonly cropped round the forehead and neck, but the females suffer it to grow long; and the greatest part of them tie a lock of it on the crown, while a few club it behind, after our method. Both the men and women perforate their ears with several holes, about the outer and lower part of the edge, wherein they suspend small bunches of beads. They also perforate the *septum* of the nose, through which they often thrust the quill-feathers of birds, or little bending ornaments, made of a tubulous shelly substance, strung on a stiff cord, of the length of three or four inches, which give

\* Crantz's History of Greenland, Vol. I. p. 136—138.

them

them a ridiculous and grotesque appearance. But the most extraordinary ornamental fashion, adopted by some of the natives of both sexes, is their having the under-lip cut quite through lengthwise, rather below the swelling part. This incision frequently exceeds two inches in length, and either by its natural retraction while the wound is still fresh, or by the repetition of some artificial management, assumes the appearance and shape of lips, and becomes sufficiently large to admit the tongue through. This happened to be the case, when a person with his under-lip thus slit was first seen by one of our sailors, who immediately exclaimed, that the man had two mouths; which, indeed, it greatly resembles. They fix in this artificial mouth a flat, narrow kind of ornament, made principally out of a solid shell or bone, cut into small narrow pieces, like teeth, almost down to the base, or thick part, which has, at each end, a projecting bit, that serves to support it when put into the divided lip; the cut part then appearing outwards. Some of them only perforate the lower lip into separate holes; on which occasion the ornament consists of the same number of distinct shelly studs, the points of which are thrust through these holes, and their heads appear within the lip, not unlike another row of teeth under their natural ones.

Such

Such are the native ornaments of these people. But we observed among them many beads of European manufacture, chiefly of a pale blue colour, which are hung in their ears, or about their caps, or are joined to their lip-ornaments, which have a little hole drilled in each of the points to which they are fastened, and others to them; till they sometimes even hang as low as the point of the chin. In this last case, however, they cannot remove them with such facility; for, with respect to their own lip-ornaments, they can take them out with their tongue at pleasure. They likewise wear bracelets of beads, made of a shelly substance, or others of a cylindrical form, composed of a substance resembling amber. And they are, in general, so fond of ornaments of some kind or other, that they fix any thing in their perforated lip; for one of them appeared with two of our iron nails projecting like prongs from it; and another man attempted to put a large brass button into it.

The men often paint their faces of a black colour, and of a bright red, and sometimes of a blueish or leaden hue; but not in any regular figure. The women puncture or stain the chin with black, that comes to a point in each of their cheeks; a custom similar to which is in vogue among the Greenland females, as we are informed by Crantz. The bodies of these people are not painted, which may probably be owing to the

scarcity of materials for that purpose ; all the colours which they brought for sale, being in very small quantities. Upon the whole, we have in no country seen savages who take more pains than these do, to ornament, or rather (as we should think) to disfigure their persons.

Their canoes are of two sorts ; the one large and open, the other small and covered. We have mentioned before, that there were twenty women, and one man, besides children, in one of their large boats. Captain Cook having attentively examined this, and compared its construction with Crantz's description of the great, or women's boat in Greenland, found that they were built in the same mode, with no other difference than in the form of the head and stern, particularly of the former, which somewhat resembles a whale's head. The framing consists of slender pieces of wood ; and the outside is composed of the skins of seals, or other sea animals, stretched over the wood. The small canoes of these people, are constructed nearly of the same form and materials with those of the Esquimaux and Greenlanders. Some of these, as we have already mentioned, carry two persons. Their fore-part is curved like the head of a violin ; and they are broader in proportion to their length than those of the Esquimaux.

Their weapons, and implements for hunting and fishing, are the same with those used by the Greenlanders and Esquimaux. Many of their  
spears

Spears are headed with iron, and their arrows are generally pointed with bone. Their larger darts are thrown by means of a piece of wood about a foot long, with a small groove in the middle, which receives the dart: at the bottom is a hole for the reception of one finger, which enables them to grasp the piece of wood much firmer, and to throw with greater force. For defensive armour they have a sort of jacket, or coat of mail, formed of laths, fastened together with sinews, which render it very flexible, though it is so close as not to admit a dart or arrow. It serves only to cover the trunk of the body, and may, not improperly, be compared to the flays worn by women.

We had not an opportunity of seeing any of the habitations of the natives, as none of them dwelt in the bay where our ships anchored, or where any of us landed. With respect to their domestic utensils, they brought, in their canoes, some round and oval wooden dishes, rather shallow; and others of a cylindrical form, considerably deeper. The sides consisted of one piece, bent round, after the manner of our chip boxes, but thick, and neatly fastened with thongs; the bottoms being fixed in with small pegs of wood. Others were somewhat smaller, and of a more elegant figure, not unlike a large oval butter-boat, without any handle, but shallower: these were composed of a piece of wood, or some horny



substance, and were sometimes neatly carved. They had a number of little square bags, made of the same gut with their exterior frocks, curiously adorned with very small red feathers, interwoven with it, in which were contained several very fine sinews, and bundles of small cord, made out of them, plaited with extraordinary ingenuity. They likewise brought some wooden models of their canoes, chequered baskets, wrought so closely as to hold water, and a considerable number of small images, of the length of four or five inches, either of wood, or stuffed, which were covered with a piece of fur, and embellished with quill-feathers, with hair fixed on their heads. We could not determine whether these were intended merely as children's toys, or were held in veneration, as representing their deceased friends and relations, and applied to some superstitious purpose. They have many instruments formed of two or three hoops, or concentric pieces of wood, having a cross-bar fixed in the middle, by which they are held. To these they fix a number of dried barnacle-shells, with threads, which, when shaken, produce a loud noise, and thus serve the purpose of a rattle. This contrivance is probably a substitute for the rattling-bird at King George's Sound.

It is uncertain with what tools their wooden utensils, frames of canoes, &c. are made; the only one that we observed among them being a sort of  
stone

stone adze, somewhat resembling those of Otaheite, and other islands of the Pacific Ocean. They have a great quantity of iron knives, some of which are rather curved, others straight, and some very small ones, fixed in longish handles, with the blades bent upwards. They have also knives of another sort, sometimes almost two feet in length, shaped, in a great measure, like a dagger, with a ridge towards the middle. They wear these in sheaths of skins, hung by a thong round their necks, under their robe or frock. It is probable, that they use them only as weapons, and that their other knives are applied to different purposes. Whatever they have, is as well made as if they were provided with a complete chest of tools; and their plaiting of sinews, sewing, and small work on their little bags above mentioned, may be said to vie with the neatest manufactures found in any part of the globe. Upon the whole, considering the uncivilized state of the natives of this Sound, their northerly situation, amidst a country almost continually covered with snow, and the comparatively wretched materials they have to work with, it appears, that, with respect to their skill and invention, in all manual operations, they are at least equal to any other people.

The food that we saw them eat, was the flesh of some animal, either roasted or broiled, and dried fish. Some of the former that was purchased,

chafed, had the appearance of bear's flesh. They likewise eat a larger sort of fern-root, either baked or dressed in some other method. Some of us observed them eat freely of a substance, which we imagined was the interior part of the pine bark. Their drink, in all probability, is water; for, in their canoes, they brought snow in wooden vessels, which they swallowed by mouthfuls. Their manner of eating is decent and cleanly, for they constantly took care to remove any dirt that might adhere to their food; and though they would sometimes eat the raw fat of some sea animal, they did not fail to cut it carefully into mouthfuls. Their persons were, to appearance, always clean; and their utensils, in general, were kept in excellent order, as were also their boats.

The language of these people seems difficult to be understood; which is, perhaps, not owing to any confusion or indistinctness in their sounds, but to the various significations which their words bear. For they appeared frequently to make use of the same word on very different occasions; though, probably, if we had had a longer intercourse with them, this might have proved to be a mistake on our part. Among the very few words of their language that Mr. Anderson was enabled to procure, are the following, viz. *aa*, yes; *keeta*, give me something; *tawuk*, keep it; *akejhou*, what's the name of that? *namuk*, an ear-ornament; *natooneshuk*, a sea-otter's skin;  
*ableu*,

*ableu*, a spear; *yaut*, I'll go, or, shall I go? *keelashuk*, guts of which they make jackets; *naema*, give me something by way of exchange, or barter; *wbaebai*, shall I keep it? *oonaka*, of, or belonging to me.

Our knowledge of the animals of this part of the American continent, is entirely derived from the skins that were brought by the natives for sale. These were principally of bears, common and pine martins, sea-otters, seals, racoons, small ermines, foxes, and the whitish cat or lynx. Among these various skins, the most common were those of racoons, martins, and sea-otters, which constituted the ordinary dress of these people; but the skins of the martins, which were in general of a far lighter brown than those of Nootka, were greatly superior to them in point of fineness; whereas those of the sea-otters, which, as well as the martins, were much more plentiful here than at Nootka, seemed to be considerably inferior in the thickness and fineness of their fur, though they far exceeded them with respect to size; and were, for the most part, of the glossy black sort. The skins of seals and bears were also pretty common; and the former were in general white, beautifully spotted with black, or sometimes simply white; and many of the bears here were of a dark brown hue.

Besides these animals, there is here the white bear, of whose skins the natives brought several

pieces, and some compleat skins of cubs. There is also the wolverine, or quickhatch, whose skin has very bright colours; and a larger species of ermine than the common one, varied with brown, and having scarcely any black on its tail. The skin of the head of some very large animal was likewise brought to us, but we could not positively decide what it was: though, from the colour and shagginess of the hair, and its not resembling any land animal, we conjectured that it might be that of the male ursine seal, or sea-bear. But one of the most beautiful skins that fell under our observation, is that of a small animal near a foot in length, of a brown colour on the back with a number of obscure whitish specks, the sides being of a blueish ash colour, with a few of these specks. The tail is about a third part of the length of the body, and is covered with whitish hair. This animal is doubtless the same with that which is called by Mr. Stæhlin, in his account of the New Northern Archipelago, the spotted field-mouse. But whether it is really of the mouse kind, or a squirrel, we could not determine, for want of entire skins; though Mr. Anderson was inclined to imagine, that it is the same animal which Mr. Pennant has described under the appellation of the Casan marmot. The great number of skins that we observed here, demonstrates the abundance of the various animals we have mentioned; but it is somewhat remarkable,

markable, that we neither met with the skins of the mouse, nor of the common species of deer.

With respect to birds, we found here the *bal-  
gyon*, or great king fisher, which had fine bright  
colours; the shag; the white-headed eagle; and  
the humming-bird, which often flew about our  
ships, while we lay at anchor; though it can  
scarcely be supposed to live here during the win-  
ter, which must be extremely severe. The wa-  
ter-fowl seen by us were black sea-pyes, with red  
bills, such as we met with in New-Zealand and  
Van Diemen's Land; geese; a small sort of duck,  
nearly resembling that species we saw at Ker-  
guelen's Land; and another sort with which none  
of us were acquainted. Some of our people who  
went ashore, killed a snipe, a grouse, and some  
plovers. But though the water-fowl were nu-  
merous, particularly the geese and ducks, they  
were so shy that it was scarce possible to get  
within shot; in consequence of which, we pro-  
cured a very inconsiderable supply of them as re-  
freshment. The duck before-mentioned is about  
the size of the common wild duck, of a deep  
black, with red feet, and a short pointed tail.  
Its bill is white, tinged towards the point with  
red, and has a large black spot, almost square,  
near its base, on each side, where it is also some-  
what distended. On the forehead is a large tri-  
angular white spot; and on the hinder part of the  
neck is one still larger. The colours of the fe-  
male

male are considerably duller than those of the male; and it has none of the ornaments of the bill, excepting the two black spots, which are rather obscure.

A species of diver, which seems peculiar to this place, was observed here. It is equal to a partridge in size, and has a short, black, compressed bill. Its head, and the upper part of its neck, are of a brownish black; and the remainder of its body is of a deep brown, obscurely waved with black, except the under part, which is totally of a blackish cast, minutely varied with white. We also found a small land bird, of the finch kind, about the size of a yellow-hammer; but we imagined it to be one of those which change their colour with the season, and with their different migrations. It was, at this time, of a dusky brown, with a reddish tail; and the supposed male had, on the crown of the head, a large yellow spot, with some varied black on the upper part of its neck; but the latter was on the breast of the female.

The fish that were principally brought to us by the natives for sale, were torsk and halibut; and we caught some sculpins about the ship, with star-fish of a purplish hue, that had sixteen or eighteen rays. The rocks were almost destitute of shell-fish; and the only other animal of this tribe that was observed by us, was a reddish crab, covered with very large spines.

The

The metals seen by us were iron and copper; both which, but more particularly the former, were in such abundance, as to form the points of numbers of their lances and arrows. The ores which they made use of to paint themselves with, were a brittle, unctuous, red ochre, or iron ore; a pigment of a bright blue; and black lead. Each of these seemed to be very scarce among them.

We observed few vegetables of any kind; and the trees that chiefly grew about this sound, were the Canadian and spruce pine, some of which were of a considerable size.

These people must, doubtless, have received from some more civilized nation, the beads and iron found among them. We were almost certain, that we were the first Europeans with whom they had ever had a direct communication; and it remains only to be determined, from what quarter they had procured our manufactures, by intermediate conveyance. And it is more than probable, that they had obtained these articles, through the intervention of the more inland tribes, either from the settlements about Hudson's Bay, or those on the lakes of Canada; unless we can admit the supposition, that the Russians, from Kamtschatka, have already extended their traffic to this distance; or that the natives of their most easterly Fox Islands carry on an intercourse along the coast, with the inhabitants of Prince William's Sound.

With



With respect to copper, these people, perhaps, procure it themselves, or, at most, it passes to them through few hands; for, when they offered any of it by way of barter, they used to express its being in sufficient plenty among them, by pointing to their weapons; as if they meant to intimate, that, as they had so much copper of their own, there was no occasion for increasing their stock.

If, however, the natives of this inlet are furnished with European commodities by means of the intermediate traffic to the eastern coast, it is rather remarkable, that they should never, in return, have supplied the more inland Indians with some of their sea-otter skins, which would undoubtedly have appeared, at some time or other, in the environs of Hudson's Bay. But that does not appear to be the case; and the only method by which we can account for this, must be by considering the very great distance; which, though it might not prevent European articles of commerce from coming so far, as being so uncommon, might hinder the skins, which are common, from passing through more than two or three tribes, who might make use of them for their own clothing, and send others, which they reckoned of inferior value, as being of their own animals, towards the east, till they reach the traders at the European settlements.

## CHAP. VI.

*Proceed along the Coast—Cape Elizabeth—Cape St. Hermogenes—Beering's Voyage and Chart very defective—Point Banks—Barren Isles—Cape Douglas—Cape Bede—Mount St. Augustin—Endeavour to find a passage up an Inlet—Both Ships make a Progress up it—Convincing Proofs of its being a River—A Branch of it called River Turnagain—The great River named Cook's River—The Ships return—Several Visits from the Natives—Lieutenant King lands, displays a Flag, and takes possession of the Country—His Reception by the Natives—The Resolution strikes upon a Bank—The high Tides accounted for.*

**L**EAVING Prince William's Sound, on Wednesday the 20th of May, we steered to the south-west, with a gentle breeze; which was succeeded by a calm at four o'clock the next morning, and that calm was soon after followed by a breeze from south-west. We continued to stretch to the south-west, and passed a lofty promontory, in the latitude of  $59^{\circ} 10'$ , and the longitude of  $207^{\circ} 45'$ . It having been discovered on Princess Elizabeth's birth-day, Captain Cook gave it the name of *Cape Elizabeth*. As we could see no land beyond it, we flattered ourselves that it was the western extremity of the continent;

but

but we were soon convinced that we were mistaken, fresh land appearing in sight, bearing west-south-west. The wind had now increased to a strong gale, and forced us to a considerable distance from the coast. On the 22d, in the afternoon, the gale abated; and we stood for Cape Elizabeth; which, about noon the next day, bore west, distant ten leagues. New land was then seen, bearing south-west, which, it was imagined, connected Cape Elizabeth with the land we had seen towards the west.

We stood to the southward till the next day at noon, at which time we were about three leagues from the coast, which we had seen on the 22d. In this situation, it formed a point, that bore west north-west. More land was discovered, extending to the southward; on which was seen a ridge of mountains, with summits covered with snow, behind the first land, which we supposed to be an island, there appearing on it but an inconsiderable quantity of snow. The latitude of this point of land is  $58^{\circ} 15'$ , and its longitude  $207^{\circ} 42'$ . And, by what the Commodore could gather from Beering's Voyage and Chart, he supposed it to be what he called Cape St. Hermogenes. But the account of that Voyage, as well as the chart, is so extremely inaccurate, that it is almost impossible to discover any one place, which that navigator either saw or touched at. The Commodore, indeed, was by no means certain,  
that

that the bay which he had named after Beering, was the place where he had anchored.

In the chart above-mentioned, a space is here pointed out, where Beering is supposed to have seen no land. This favoured Mr. Stæhelin's account, who makes Cape St. Hermogenes, and the land discovered by Beering to the south-west of it, to be a cluster of islands; and that St. Hermogenes is one of those which are destitute of wood. This appeared to be confirmed by what we now saw; and we entertained the pleasing hopes of finding here a passage northward, without being under the necessity of proceeding any farther to the south-west.

By variable light airs and calms, we were detained off the Cape till two o'clock in the morning of the 25th, when a breeze springing up, we steered along the coast, and perceived that the land of Cape St. Hermogenes was an island, about six leagues in circumference, separated from the coast by a channel of about one league in breadth. Some rocks lie above water, a league and a half to the north of this island; and on the north-east side of the rocks, we had from thirty to twenty fathoms water.

About noon, St. Hermogenes bore south-east, distant eight leagues; the land to the north-west extending from south half west to near west. In the last direction it ended in a low point, named *Point Banks*. The ship was, at this time, in  
the

the latitude of  $58^{\circ} 41'$ , and in the longitude of  $207^{\circ} 44'$ . In this situation, the land was in sight, bearing north-west, which, it was imagined, connected Cape Elizabeth with this south-west land. When we approached it, we saw it was a groupe of high islands and rocks, and consequently unconnected with any other land. From the nakedness of their appearance, they were denominated the *Barren Isles*: they are situated in the latitude of  $59^{\circ}$ , three leagues distant from Cape Elizabeth, and five from Point Banks.

We intended to have passed through one of the channels by which these islands are divided; but, a strong current setting against us, we went to the leeward of them all. The weather, which had been thick and hazy, cleared up towards the evening, and we perceived a very lofty promontory, whose elevated summit appeared above the clouds, forming two exceedingly high mountains. The Commodore named this promontory *Cape Douglas*, in honour of his friend Dr. Douglas, canon of Windsor. Its latitude is  $58^{\circ} 56'$ , and its longitude  $206^{\circ} 10'$ ; twelve leagues from Point Banks, and ten to the westward of the Barren Isles.

The coast seemed to form a large deep bay, between this point and Cape Douglas; which, from our observing some smoke upon Point Banks received the name of *Smoky Bay*. On the 26th, at day-break, being to the northward of the Bar-

ren Isles, we perceived more land, extending from Cape Douglass to the north. It consisted of a chain of very high mountains; one of which being much more conspicuous than the rest, obtained the name of *Mount St. Augustin*.

We were not discouraged at perceiving this land, supposing it to be wholly unconnected with the land of Cape Elizabeth. We also expected to find a passage to the north-west, between Cape Douglass and Mount St. Augustin. It was, indeed, imagined, that the land to the north of Cape Douglass, consisted of a groupe of islands, separated by so many channels, any of which we might have chosen, according to the direction of the wind.

Flattered with these ideas, and having a fresh gale at north-north-east, we stood to the north-west, till eight o'clock, when we were fully convinced, that what we had supposed to be islands, were summits of mountains, connected by the lower land, which we could not perceive at a greater distance, on account of the haziness of the horizon. This land was covered wholly with snow, from the tops of the mountains down to the sea-beach; and had, in every other respect, the appearance of a great continent. Captain Cook was now fully convinced that he should discover no passage by this inlet: and his persevering in the search of it, was more to satisfy others, than to confirm his own opinion.

Mount St. Augustin, at this time, bore north-west, about three leagues distant. It is of vast height, and of a conical figure; but whether it be an island, or part of the continent, is not yet ascertained. Perceiving that nothing was to be done to the west, we stood over to Cape Elizabeth, under which we fetched at about five in the afternoon.

Between Cape Elizabeth and a lofty promontory, named *Cape Bede*\*, is a bay, in which there appeared to be two snug harbours. We stood into this bay, and might have anchored there in twenty-three fathoms water: but, the Commodore having no such intention, we tacked, and stood to the westward, with a very strong gale, accompanied with rain and hazy weather. The gale abated the next morning, and about three o'clock in the afternoon, the weather cleared up; Cape Douglas bearing south-west by west, and the depth of water being forty fathoms, over a rocky bottom.

The coast from Cape Bede, trended north-east by east, with a chain of mountains inland, in the same direction. On the coast, the land was woody, and there appeared to be some commodious harbours. We had the mortification, however, to discover low land in the middle of the inlet, ex-

\* This name, and that of Mount St. Augustin, were directed by our calendar.

tending from north-north-east, to north-east by east; but, as it was supposed to be an island, we were not much discouraged. About this time we steered, with a light breeze, to the westward of this low land; as, in that direction, there was no appearance of obstruction. Our soundings were from thirty to twenty-five fathoms.

In the morning of the 28th, having but little wind, the ship drove to the southward; and, in order to stop her, we dropped a kedge-anchor, with an eight inch hauser. But, in bringing the ship up, we lost both that and the anchor. We brought the ship up, however, with one of the bowers, and spent a considerable part of the day in sweeping for them, but without effect. We were now in the latitude of  $59^{\circ} 51'$ ; the low-land extended from north-east to south-east, the nearest part distant about two leagues. The land on the western shore was distant about seven leagues. A strong tide set to the south-ward, out of the inlet; it was the ebb, and ran almost four knots in an hour. At ten o'clock it was low water. Great quantities of sea-weed, and some drift wood, were taken out with the tide. Though the water had become thick, and resembled that in rivers, we were encouraged to proceed, by finding it as salt as the ocean, even at low water. Three knots was the strength of the flood tide; and the stream continued to run up till four in the afternoon.



Having a calm the whole day, we moved with a light breeze at east, at eight o'clock in the evening, and stood to the north, up the inlet. The wind, soon after, veered to the north, increased to a fresh gale, and blew in squalls, with some rain. But this did not hinder us from plying up while the flood continued, which was till the next morning, at near five o'clock. We had from thirty-five to twenty-four fathoms water. We anchored about two leagues from the eastern shore, where our latitude was  $60^{\circ} 8'$ ; some low land, which we supposed to be an island, lying under the western shore, distant between three and four leagues.

The weather having now become fair and clear, we could see any land within our horizon; when nothing was visible to obstruct our progress in a north-east direction. But a ridge of mountains appeared on each side, rising behind each other, without any separation. Captain Cook supposed it to be low water about ten o'clock, but the ebb ran down till almost twelve. Two columns of smoke were now visible on the eastern shore; a certain sign that inhabitants were near. We weighed at one in the afternoon, and plied up under double reefed topsails, having a strong gale at north-east.

We stretched over to the western shore, intending to have taken shelter till the gale should cease; but falling suddenly from forty fathoms water

into twelve, and seeing the appearance of a shoal, we stretched back to the eastward, and anchored in nineteen fathoms water, under the eastern shore; the north-west part of which, ended in a bluff point.

On the 30th of May, about two o'clock in the morning, we weighed anchor again, the gale having much abated, but still continuing contrary. We plied up till near seven, and then anchored in nineteen fathoms water, under the shore to the eastward.

Two canoes, with a man in each, came off to the ship about noon, nearly from that part where we had seen the smoke the day before. It cost them some labour to paddle across the strong tide; and they hesitated a little, before they dared venture to approach us. One of them was very loquacious, but to no purpose, for we could not understand a syllable he said: while he was talking, he kept pointing continually to the shore, which we supposed to be an invitation for us to go thither. Captain Cook made them a present of a few trifles, which he conveyed to them from the quarter gallery.

These people strongly resembled those we had seen in Prince William's Sound, both in dress and person: their canoes were also constructed in the same manner. One of our visitors seemed to have no beard, and his face was painted of a jet black; the other, who was older, was not paint-

ed, but he had a large beard, and a countenance like the common sort of the people in the Sound. Sinoke was this day seen upon the flat western shore; whence we inferred, that these lower spots only are inhabited.

As we weighed when the flood made, the canoes quitted us. We stood over to the western shore, with a fresh gale, and fetched under the point above mentioned. This, with the point on the opposite shore, contracted the breadth of the channel to about four leagues, through which ran a prodigious tide. It had a terrible appearance, as we were ignorant whether the water was thus agitated by the stream, or by the dashing of the waves against sands or rocks. Meeting with no shoal, we concluded it to be the former, but we afterwards found ourselves mistaken.

We kept the western shore aboard, that appearing to be the fairest. We had a depth of thirteen fathoms near the shore, and, two or three miles off, upwards of forty. In the evening, about eight o'clock, we anchored under a point of land, bearing north-east, distant about three leagues, and lay there during the ebb.

Till we arrived here, the water retained an equal degree of saltness, both at high and low water, and was as salt as that which is in the ocean; but now the marks of a river evidently displayed themselves. The water, which was taken up at this ebb, was much fresher than any

we had tasted; whence we concluded that we were in a large river, and not in a strait which had a communication with the northern seas. But, having proceeded thus far, we were anxious to have stronger proofs; and, therefore, in the morning of the 31st we weighed with the flood, and drove up with the tide, having but little wind.

We were attended, about eight o'clock, by many of the natives, in one large canoe, and several small ones. The latter had only one person on board each; and some of the paddles had a blade at each end, like those of the Esquimaux. Men, women, and children, were contained in the large canoes. At some distance from the ship, they exhibited on a long pole, a kind of leathern frock, which we interpreted to be a sign of their peaceable intentions. They conveyed this frock into the ship, as an acknowledgment for some trifles which the Commodore had given them.

No difference appeared either in the persons, dresses, or canoes of these people, and the natives of Prince William's Sound, except that the small canoes were not so large as those of the Sound, and carried only one man.

We bartered with them for some of their fur dresses, made of the skins of animals; particularly those of sea-otters, martins, and hares: we also had a few of their darts, and a supply of salmon

and halibut. We gave them in exchange for these, some old clothes, beads, and pieces of iron.

They were already possessed of large iron knives, and glass beads of a sky-blue colour, such as we saw among the inhabitants of Prince William's Sound. The latter, as well as those which they received of us, they seemed to value highly. But they were particularly earnest in asking for large pieces of iron, to which they gave the name of *goone*; though with them, as well as with their neighbours in the Sound, one word seemed to have many significations. Their language is certainly the same; the words *oonaka*, *keeta*, and *naema*, and a few others which were frequently used in Prince William's Sound, were also commonly used by this new tribe. After passing about two hours between the two ships, they retired to the western shore.

We anchored at nine o'clock, in sixteen fathoms water, and almost two leagues from the western shore, the ebb being already begun. It ran but three knots an hour at its greatest strength; and fell, after we had anchored, twenty-one feet upon a perpendicular. The weather was alternately clear and misty, with drizzling rain. When it was clear, we perceived low land between the mountains on the eastern shore, bearing east from the station of the ships, which we concluded to be islands between us and the main land. We  
also

also beheld low land to the northward, which appeared to extend from the mountains on one side, to those on the other; and, at low water, large shoals were seen, stretching out from this low land, from some of which we were not far distant. We doubted, from these appearances, whether the inlet did not take an easterly direction through the above opening; or whether that opening was only a branch of it, the main channel continuing its northern direction. The chain of mountains, on each side of it, strongly countenanced the latter supposition.

To be satisfied of these particulars, Captain Cook dispatched two boats; and, when the flood-tide made, followed with the two ships: but it being a dead calm, and having a strong tide, we anchored, after driving about ten miles. At the lowest of the ebb, the water at and near the surface was perfectly fresh; though retaining a considerable degree of saltness, if taken above a foot below it. We had this and many other convincing proofs of its being a river: such as thick muddy water, low shores, trees, and rubbish of various kinds, floating backwards and forwards with the tide. In the afternoon we received another visit from the natives, in several canoes, who trafficked considerably with our people, without so much as attempting any dishonest action.

At two o'clock in the morning of the first of June, the master, who commanded the two boats,  
returned,

returned, informing us that he found the inlet, or river, contracted to one league in breadth, and that it took a northerly course through low land on each side. He advanced about three leagues through this narrow part, which he found from twenty to seventeen fathoms deep. While the stream ran down, the water was perfectly fresh; but it became brackish when it ran up, and very much so towards high water.

He went ashore upon an island, between this branch and that to the east, and saw some currant bushes; and some other fruit trees and bushes that were unknown to him. About three leagues to the northward of this searh, he saw another separation in the eastern chain of mountains, through which he supposed it probable the river took a north-east direction; but this, perhaps, was only another branch, and the main channel continued in a northern direction between the two chains of mountains.

The hopes of finding a passage were no longer entertained; but as the ebb was spent, and we were unable to return against the tide, we took the advantage of the latter, to get a closer view of the eastern branch; in order to determine whether the low land, on the east, was an island, or not. For this purpose we weighed with the first of the flood, and stood over for the eastern shore. At eight o'clock a breeze sprung up in an opposite direction to our course, so that we despaired

spaired of reaching the entrance of the river, The Commodore, therefore, dispatched two boats, under the command of Lieutenant King, to make such observations as might enable us to form some tolerable idea of the nature of the river.

We anchored, about ten o'clock, in nine fathoms water. The Commodore, observing the strength of the tide to be so great, that the boats could not make head against it, made a signal for them to return before they had proceeded half way to the entrance of the river. The chief knowledge obtained by this tide's work, was, that all the low land, which we imagined to be an island, was one continued tract from the great river to the foot of the mountains, terminating at the south entrance of this eastern branch, which the Commodore denominated the *river Turnagain*. The low land begins again on the north side of this river, and extends from the foot of the mountains, to the banks of the great river; forming, before the river Turnagain, a large bay, having from twelve to five fathoms water.

After entering the bay, the flood set very strong into the river Turnagain, and the ebb came out still stronger, the water falling twenty feet upon a perpendicular. From these circumstances, it plainly appeared, that a passage was not to be expected by this side river, any more than by the main branch. But, as the water at ebb, though much fresher, retained a considerable degree of saltiness,



saltness, it is probable that both these branches are navigable by ships much farther; and that a very extensive inland communication lies open, by means of this river and its several branches. We had traced it to the latitude of  $61^{\circ} 30'$ , and the longitude of  $210^{\circ}$ , which is upwards of seventy leagues from its entrance, and saw no appearance of its source.

The time we spent in the discovery of this great river \* ought not to be regretted, if it should hereafter prove useful to the present, or any future age. But the delay, thus occasioned, was an essential loss to us, who had an object of greater magnitude in view. The season was far advanced; and it was now evident that the continent of North America extended much farther to the west, than we had reason to expect from the most approved charts. The Commodore, however, had the satisfaction to reflect, that, if he had not examined this very large river, speculative fabricators of geography would have ventured to assert, that it had a communication with the sea to the north, or with Hudson's or Baffin's bay to the east; and it would probably have been marked, on future maps of the world, with as much appearance of precision, as the imaginary straits of de Fuca, and de Fonte.

\* Captain Cook having here left a blank, Lord Sandwich very judiciously directed it to be called *Cook's River*.

Mr,

Mr. King was again sent, in the afternoon, with two armed boats, with orders from Captain Cook to land on the south-east side of the river, where he was to display the flag; and, in his Majesty's name, to take possession of the country and the river. He was also ordered to bury a bottle in the earth, containing some English coin of 1772, and a paper, whereon were written the names of our ships, and the date of our discovery. The ships, in the mean time, were got under sail. The wind blew fresh easterly, but we had not been long under way before a calm ensued; and the flood tide meeting us, we found it necessary to anchor in six fathoms water; the point where Mr. King landed bearing south, at the distance of two miles. This point of land was named *Point Possession*.

On Mr. King's return, he informed the Commodore, than when he approached the shore, he saw eighteen or twenty of the natives with their arms extended; an attitude, he supposed, meant to signify their peaceable disposition, and to convince him that they were without weapons. Seeing Mr. King and his attendants land, and observing musquets in their hands, they were alarmed, and requested (by expressive signs) that they would lay them down. This was immediately complied with, and then Mr. King and his party were permitted to walk up to them, when

when they appeared to be very sociable and chearful.

They had with them several dogs, and a few pieces of fresh salmon. Mr. Law, Surgeon of the Discovery, happening to be of the party, purchased one of the dogs, and, taking it towards the boat, immediately shot it dead. At this they seemed exceedingly surprized; and, not thinking themselves safe in such company, they walked away; but it presently appeared, that they had concealed their spears and other weapons in the bushes close behind them. Mr. King informed us, that the ground was swampy, and the soil poor and light. It, however, produced some pines, alders, birch, and willows; some rose and currant bushes, and a little grass; but there was not a plant in flower to be seen.

When it was high water we weighed anchor, and, with a faint breeze, stood over to the west shore, where we anchored early the next morning, on account of the return of the flood. Presently after we were visited by several of the natives, in canoes, who bartered their skins, and afterwards parted with their garments, many of them returning perfectly naked. Among others they brought a great quantity of the skins of white rabbits and red foxes, but only two or three of those of otters. We also purchased some pieces of halibut and salmon. They gave iron the preference to every thing we offered them in exchange.

exchange. The lip-ornaments were less in fashion among them than at Prince William's Sound; but those which pass through the nose were more frequent, and, in general, considerably longer. They had, likewise, more embroidered work on their garments, quivers, knife-cases, and many other articles.

We weighed at half past ten, and plied down the river with a gentle breeze at south; when, by the inattention of the man at the lead, the *Resolution* struck, and stuck upon a bank, nearly in the middle of the river. It is pretty certain that this bank occasioned that strong agitation of the stream, with which we were so much surprised when turning up the river. We had twelve feet depth of water about the ship, at the lowest of the ebb, but the bank was dry in other parts.

When the *Resolution* came aground, Captain Cook made a signal for the *Discovery* to anchor. We were afterwards informed, that she had been almost ashore on the west side of the bank. About five o'clock in the afternoon, as the flood tide came in, the ship floated off without sustaining any damage, or occasioning the least trouble. We then stood over to the west shore, where we anchored, in deep water, to wait for the ebb, the wind being still unfavourable to us.

At ten o'clock at night we weighed with the ebb; and, about five the next morning, (the 3d  
or

of June) the tide being finished, we cast anchor on the west shore, about two miles below the bluff point. When we were in this station we were visited by many of the natives, who attended us all the morning; and, indeed, their company was highly acceptable to us, as they brought with them a quantity of fine salmon, which they exchanged for some of our trifles. Several hundred weight of it was procured for the two ships, and the greatest part of it split; and ready for drying,

The mountains now, for the first time after our entering the river, were free from clouds, and we perceived a volcano in one of those on the western side. Its latitude is  $60^{\circ} 23'$ ; and it is the first high mountain north of Mount St. Augustin. The volcano is near the summit, and on that part of the mountain next the river. It emits a white smoke, but no fire. The wind continuing southerly, we still tided it down the river; and, on the morning of the 5th, arriving at the place where we had lost our kedge anchor, we attempted, though unsuccessfully, to recover it.

Before our departure from this place, we were again visited by some of the natives, in six canoes, from the eastern shore. For half an hour they remained at a small distance from the ships, gazing at them with a kind of silent surprize, without uttering a syllable to us, or to each other. At length

length they grew courageous, came along-side, and began to barter with us; nor did they leave us till they had parted with their skins and salmon, which were the only articles they had brought to traffick with.

It may not be unnecessary to remark, that all the people we had seen in this river, had a striking resemblance, in every particular, to those who inhabit Prince William's Sound, but differed most essentially from those of Nootka, as well in their persons as their language.

The points of their spears and knives are made of iron; some of the former, indeed, are made of copper. Their spears resemble our spontoons; and their knives, for which they have sheaths, are of a considerable length. Except these, and a few glass beads, every thing we saw amongst them was of their own manufacture. We have already hazarded conjectures from whence they derive their foreign articles. It cannot be supposed, however, that the Russians have been amongst them, for we should not then have seen them cloathed in such valuable skins as those of the sea-otter.

A very beneficial fur trade might certainly be carried on with the natives of this vast coast; but, without a northern passage, it is too remote for Great-Britain to be benefited by such commerce. It should, however, be observed, that almost the only valuable skins, on this west

side of North America, are those of the sea-otter. Their other skins were of a superior quality ; and it should be farther observed, that the greater part of the skins, which we purchased of them, were made up into garments. Some of them indeed, were in pretty good condition, others, old and ragged, and all of them extremely lousy. But, as skins are used by these people only for clothing themselves, they, perhaps, are not at the trouble of dressing more of them than they require for this purpose. This is probably the chief cause of their killing the animals, for they principally receive their supply of food from the sea and rivers. But if they were once habituated to a constant trade with foreigners; such an intercourse would increase their wants, by acquainting them with new luxuries ; to be enabled to purchase which, they would become more assiduous in procuring skins ; a plentiful supply of which might doubtless be obtained in this country.

The tide is very considerable in this river, and greatly assists to facilitate the navigation of it. In the stream, it is high water between two and three o'clock, on the days of the new and full moon ; and the tide rises between three and four fathoms. The mouth of the river being in a corner of the coast, the ocean forces the flood into it by both shores, which swells the tide to a greater height than at other parts of this coast.

C H A P.

## C H A P. VII.

*Departure from Cook's River—Pass St. Hermogenes—Cape Whit Sunday—Whitsuntide Bay—Cape Greville—Cape Barnabas—Two-headed Point—Trinity Island—Beering's Foggy Island—Foggy Cape—Pinnacle Point—Description of a curious Bird—Account of the Schumagin Islands—A Russian Letter brought on board the Discovery—Various Conjectures concerning it—Rock Point—Halibut Island—Halibut Head—A Volcano—Escape providentially—Arrival at Oenashka—Traffic with the Natives there—Another Russian Letter brought on board—Description of the Harbour of Samganoodba.*

THE ebb tide making in our favour, we weighed, and, with a gentle breeze at south-west, plied down the river. The flood, however, obliged us to anchor again; but, about one o'clock the next morning, we got under sail with a fresh breeze, passed the barren islands about eight, and at noon Cape St. Hermogenes bore south-south-east, about eight leagues distant. We intended to go through the passage between the island of that name and the main land; but the wind soon after failed us, and we had baffling airs from the eastward; we, therefore, abandon-



ed the design of carrying our ship through that passage.

We now beheld several columns of smoke on the continent, northward of the passage; which were probably meant as signals to attract us thither. The land forms a bay here, a low rocky island lying off the north-west point of it. Some other islands, of a similar appearance, are scattered along the coast between here and Point Banks.

About eight in the evening, St. Hermogenes extended from south half east to south-south-east; and the rocks bore south-east, distant three miles. Here we had forty fathoms water, and caught several halibut with hooks and lines. We passed the rocks, and bore up to the southward about midnight; and, on the 7th, at noon, St. Hermogenes bore north, at the distance of four leagues. The southernmost point of the main land lay north half west, five leagues distant. The latitude of this promontory is  $58^{\circ} 15'$ , and its longitude  $207^{\circ} 24'$ . It was named, after the day, *Cape-Whitsunday*; and a large bay to the west of it, was called *Whitsuntide Bay*.

The wind, which had been at north-east, shifted to the southward about two in the afternoon. The weather was gloomy, and the air cold. At midnight we stood in for the land, and at seven o'clock in the morning of the 8th, we were within four miles of it, and less than two miles from some sunken rocks, bearing west-south-west.

Here

Here we anchored in thirty-five fathoms water. In standing in for the coast, we passed the mouth of Whitsuntide Bay, and perceived land all round the bottom of it; therefore the land must either be connected, or the points lock in behind each other: the former conjecture appears to be the most probable. There are some small islands to the west of the bay. To the southward the sea coast is low, with projecting rocky points, having small inlets between them. Upon the coast there was no wood, and but little snow; but the mountains, at some distance inland, were entirely covered with snow. We were now in the latitude of  $57^{\circ} 52\frac{1}{2}'$ ; the land here forming a point, it was named *Cape Greville*. Its latitude is  $57^{\circ} 33'$ , and its longitude  $207^{\circ} 15'$ . It is fifteen leagues distant from St. Hermogenes.

The 9th, 10th, and 11th, we had constant misty weather, with some rain, and seldom had a sight of the coast; we had a gentle breeze of wind, and the air was raw and cold. We continued plying up the coast.

In the evening of the 12th, the fog clearing up, we saw the land about twelve leagues distant, bearing west; and we stood in for it early the next morning. At noon we were within three miles of it; an elevated point, which was named *Cape Barnabas*, in the latitude of  $57^{\circ} 13'$ , bore north-north-east, at the distance of about ten miles. We could not see the north-east extreme

for the haze, but the point to the south-west had an elevated summit, which terminated in two round hills, and was therefore called *Two-headed Point*. This part of the coast is principally composed of high hills, and deep vallies. We could sometimes perceive the tops of other hills, beyond those which form the coast, which had a very barren appearance, though not much incumbered with snow. Not a tree or bush was to be found, and the land, in general, had a brownish hue.

We continued to ply, and, at about six in the evening, being about midway between Cape Barnabas and *Two-headed Point*, two leagues from the shore, we had sixty-two fathoms water. Here a low point of land was observed, bearing south  $69^{\circ}$  west. On the 14th, at noon, we were in the latitude of  $56^{\circ} 49'$ . The land seen in the preceding evening now appeared like two islands. We were up with the southernmost part of this land the next morning, and perceived it to be an island, which obtained the name of *Trinity Island*. Its greatest extent, in the direction of east and west, is about six leagues. It has naked elevated land at each end, and is low towards the middle. Its latitude is  $56^{\circ} 36'$ , and its longitude  $205^{\circ}$ . It is distant about three leagues from the continent, between which rocks and islands are interspersed. There seems, nevertheless, to be good passage, and safe anchorage. We at first, imagined tha  
this

this was Beering's *Foggy Island*; but its situation is not agreeable to his chart.

In the evening, at eight, we were within a league of the small islands above-mentioned. The westernmost point of the continent, now in view, we called *Cape Trinity*, it being a low point facing Trinity Island. In this situation, we stood over for the island, meaning to work up between that and the main. In standing over towards the island, we met two men in a canoe, paddling from thence to the main: instead of approaching us, they seemed carefully to avoid it.

The wind now inclining to the south, we expected it would presently be at south-east; knowing, from experience, that a south easterly wind was here generally accompanied with a thick fog, we were afraid to venture between the island and the continent, lest we should not be able to accomplish our passage before night, or before the foggy weather came on; when we should be under the necessity of anchoring, and lose the advantage of a fair wind. Induced by these reasons, we stretched out to sea, and passed two or three rocky islets, near the east end of Trinity Island. Having weathered the island, we tacked about four in the afternoon, and steered west southerly, with a gale at south-south-east, which veered to the south-east about midnight, and was attended with misty rainy weather.

We expected, from the course we steered during the night, to fall in with the continent in the morning; and we should, doubtless, have seen it, if the weather had been clear. No land appearing at noon, and the gale and fog increasing, we steered west-north-west, under such sail as we could haul the wind with; sensible of the danger of running before a strong gale, in the vicinity of an unknown coast, and in a thick fog. It was, however, become necessary to run some risk, when the wind was favourable to us; as we were convinced, that clear weather was generally accompanied with westerly winds.

About three in the afternoon, land was perceived through the fog, bearing north-west, about three miles distant. We instantly hauled up south, close to the wind. The two courses were soon after split, and we had others to bring to the yards: several of our sails received considerable damage. The gale abated, and the weather cleared up about nine; when we again saw the coast, about the distance of five leagues. Our depth was a hundred fathoms water.

The fog returned soon after, and was dispersed about four o'clock the next morning; when we found ourselves, in some degree, surrounded by land; the continent, or that which we supposed to be the continent, some elevated land, bearing south-east, about nine leagues distant. The extreme of the main, at the north-east, was the point

point of land seen during the fog: it was named *Foggy Cape*, and lies in the latitude of  $56^{\circ} 31'$ .

Having had but little wind all night, a breeze now sprung up at north-west; we stood to the southward with this, in order to make the land plainer, that was seen in that direction. About nine o'clock, we discovered it to be an island, nine miles in circumference, in the latitude of  $56^{\circ} 10'$ , and the longitude of  $202^{\circ} 45'$ . In our chart, it is named *Foggy Island*, it being reasonable to suppose, from its situation, that it is the island on which Beering had bestowed the same appellation. Three or four islands bore north by west; a point, with pinnacle rocks upon it, bore north-west by west, called *Pinnacle Point*; and a cluster of islets south-south-east, about nine leagues from the coast. In the afternoon we had very little wind, and our progress was inconsiderable.

On Wednesday the 17th, we had gentle breezes between west and north-west; the weather was perfectly clear, and the air dry and sharp. The continent, about noon, extended from south-west to north by east; the nearest part about seven or eight leagues distant; a group of islands lying to the south-west, about the same distance from the continent.

The weather was clear and pleasant on the 18th, and it was calm the greatest part of the day. There is, probably, a continuation of the continent

nent between Foggy Cape and Trinity Island<sup>1</sup>, which the thick weather hindered us from perceiving.

The Commodore having occasion to send a boat to the Discovery, one of the people a-board her, shot a most beautiful bird. It is smaller than a duck, and the colour is black, except that the fore-part of the head is white; behind each eye, an elegant yellowish-white crest arises; the bill and feet are of a reddish colour. The first we saw of these birds was to the southward of Cape St. Hermogenes; after which we saw them daily, and frequently in large flocks. We often saw most of the other sea-birds, that are usually met with in the northern oceans; such as shags, gulls, puffins, sheer-waters, ducks, geese, and swans; and we seldom passed a day, without seeing whales, seals, and other fish of great magnitude.

We got a light breeze, southerly, in the afternoon, and steered west, for the channel between the islands and the continent. At day-break the next morning, we were not far from it, and perceived several other islands, within those that we had already seen, of various dimensions. But, between these islands, and those we had seen before, there appeared to be a clear channel, for which we steered; and, at noon, our latitude was  $55^{\circ} 18'$ , in the narrowest part of the channel. Of this groupe of islands, the largest was now upon our left, and is called *Kodiak*, as we were  
after-

afterwards informed. The Commodore did not bestow a name upon any of the others, though he supposed them to be the same that Beering has named Schumagin's Islands\*. Islands appeared to the southward, as far as an island could be seen. They begin in the longitude of  $200^{\circ} 15'$  east, and extend about two degrees to the westward.

Most of these islands are tolerably high, but very barren and rugged; exhibiting very romantic appearances, and abounding with rocks and cliffs. They have several bays and coves about them, and some fresh-water streams descend from their elevated parts; but the land was not embellished with a single tree or bush. Plenty of snow still remained on many of them, as well as on those parts of the continent which appeared between the innermost islands.

By four o'clock in the afternoon, we had passed all the islands to the south of us. We found thirty fathoms water in the channel, and soon after we had got through it, the Discovery, which was two miles astern, fired three guns, and brought to, making a signal to speak with us. Captain Cook was much alarmed at this; for, as no apparent danger had been observed in the channel, he was apprehensive that the Discovery had sprung a leak, or met with some similar accident. A boat was sent to her, which immediately re-

\* *Decouvertes des Russes*, par Muller, p. 262. 277.

turned



turned with Captain Clerke. He informed the Commodore, that some natives, in three or four canoes, having followed the ship for some time; at last got under his stern; one of whom made many signs, having his cap off, and bowing in the European manner. A rope was then handed down from the ship, to which he fastened a thin wooden box, and, after he had made some more gesticulations, the canoes left the Discovery.

It was not imagined, that the box contained any thing, till the canoes had departed, when it was accidentally opened, and found to contain a piece of paper carefully folded up, on which some writing appeared, which they supposed to be in the Russian language. To this paper was prefixed the date of 1778, and a reference was made therein to the year 1776. Though unable to decypher the alphabet of the writer, we were convinced, by his numerals, that others had preceded us in visiting these dreary regions. Indeed, the hopes of speedily meeting some of the Russian traders, must be highly satisfactory to those, who had been so long conversant with the savages of the Pacific Ocean, and those of the continent of North America.

At first, Captain Clerke imagined, that some Russians had been shipwrecked here; and that, seeing our ships, these unfortunate persons were induced thus to inform us of their situation. Deeply impressed with sentiments of humanity on  
this

this occasion, he was in hopes the Resolution would have stopped till they had time to join us; but no such idea ever occurred to Captain Cook. If this had really been the case, he supposed, that the first step which such shipwrecked persons would have taken, in order to secure relief, would have been, to send some of their people off to the ships in the canoes. He, therefore, rather thought, the paper was intended to communicate some information, from some Russian trader, who had lately visited these islands, to be delivered to any of his countrymen who should arrive; and that the natives supposing us to be Russians, had brought off the note. Convinced of this, he enquired no farther into the matter, but made sail, and steered to the westward.

We ran all night with a gentle breeze at north-east; and the next morning at two, some breakers were seen within us, distant about two miles; others were soon after seen a-head, and they were innumerable on our larboard bow, and also between us and the land. By holding a south course, we, with difficulty, cleared them. These breakers were produced by rocks, many of which were above water; they are very dangerous, and extend seven leagues from land. We got on their outside about noon, when our latitude was  $54^{\circ} 44'$ , and our longitude  $198^{\circ}$ . The nearest land was an elevated bluff point, and was named *Rock Point*; it bore north, about eight leagues distant; the

the westernmost part of the main, bore north-west, and a high round hill, called *Halibut Head*, bore south-west, distant about thirteen leagues.

At noon on the 21st, we made but little progress, having only faint winds and calms. Halibut Head then bore north  $24^{\circ}$  west; and the island where it is situated, called *Halibut Island*, extended from north by east to north-west. This island is seven leagues in circumference, and, except the head, is very low and barren; several small islands are near it, between which and the main, there appears to be a passage, of the breadth of two or three leagues.

We were kept at such a distance from the continent, by the rocks and breakers, that we had a very distant view of the coast between Halibut Island and Rock Point. We could, however, perceive the main land covered with snow; and particularly some hills, whose elevated tops towered above the clouds to a most stupendous height. A *volcano* was seen on the most south-westerly of these hills, which perpetually threw up immense columns of black smoke; it is at no great distance from the coast, and is in the latitude of  $54^{\circ} 48'$ , and the longitude of  $195^{\circ} 45'$ . Its figure is a complete cone, and the volcano is at the summit of it: remarkable as it may appear, the wind, at the height to which the smoke of the volcano rose, often moved in an opposite direction to what it did at sea, even in a fresh gale.

Having

Having three hours calm in the afternoon, upwards of an hundred halibuts were caught by our people, some of which weighed upwards of an hundred pounds, and none of them less than twenty. They were highly acceptable to us. We fished in thirty-five fathoms water, about four miles distant from the shore; during which time we were visited by a man in a small canoe, who came from the large island. When he approached the ship, he uncovered his head and bowed, as the other had done the preceding day, when he came off to the Discovery.

That the Russians had some communication with these people, was evident, not only from their politeness, but from the written paper already mentioned. We had now an additional proof of it; for our new visitor had on a pair of green cloth breeches, and a jacket of black cloth, under the frock of his own country. He had with him a grey fox skin; and some fishing implements: also a bladder, in which was some liquid, which we supposed to be oil; for he opened it, drank a mouthful, and then closed it up again.

His canoe was smaller than those we had seen before, though of the same construction: like those who had visited the Discovery, he used the double-bladed paddle. His features resembled those of the natives of Prince William's Sound, but he was perfectly free from any kind of paint;

and

and his lip had been perforated in an oblique direction, though, at that time, he had not any ornament in it. Many of the words, so frequently used by our visitors in the Sound, were repeated to him, but he did not appear to understand any of them; owing either to his ignorance of the dialect, or our erroneous pronunciation.

The weather was principally cloudy and hazy, till the afternoon of the 22d, when the wind shifted to the south-east, attended, as usual, with thick rainy weather. Before the fog, we saw no part of the main land, except the volcano, and a neighbouring mountain. We steered west till seven, when, fearing we might fall in with the land in thick weather, we hauled to the southward till two the next morning, and then bore away west. Our progress was but trifling, having but little wind, and that variable; at five o'clock in the afternoon, we had an interval of sun-shine, when we saw land, bearing north 59° west.

On the 24th, at six in the morning, we saw the continent, and at nine it extended from north-east by east, to south-west by west; the nearest part four leagues distant. The land to the south-west consisted of islands, being what we had seen the preceding night. In the evening, being about the distance of four leagues from the shore, and having little wind, we threw out our hooks and lines, but caught only two or three little cod.

We

We got an easterly breeze the next morning, and, with it, what was very uncommon, clear weather; infomuch, that we clearly saw the volcano, the other mountains, and all the main land under them. It extended from north-east by north, to north-west half west. Between this point and the islands, a large opening appeared, for which we steered, till land was seen beyond it; and, though we did not perceive that this land joined the continent, a passage through the opening was very doubtful; as well as whether the land to the south-west was insular or continental. Unwilling to trust too much to appearances, we therefore steered to the southward; when, having got without all the land in sight, we steered west, the islands lying in that direction.

Three of them, all of a good height, we had passed by eight o'clock; more were now seen to the westward. In the afternoon, the weather became gloomy, and afterwards turned to a mist, the wind blowing fresh at east. We therefore hauled the wind to the southward till day-break, and then proceeded on our course to the west.

We derived but little advantage from daylight, the weather being so thick that we could not discover objects at the distance of a hundred yards; but, as the wind was moderate, we ventured to run. About half an hour after four, the sound of breakers alarmed us, on our larboard

bow ; we found twenty-eight fathoms water, and then twenty-five. We brought the ship to, and anchored in the last depth ; the Commodore ordering the Discovery, who was not far distant, to anchor also.

Some hours after, the fog being a little dispersed, we discovered the imminent danger we had escaped. We were three quarters of a mile from the north-east side of an island ; two elevated rocks were about half a league from us, and from each other. Several breakers also appeared about them ; and yet Providence had safely conducted the ships through in the dark, between those rocks, which we should not have attempted to have done in a clear day, and to so commodious an anchoring place.

Being so near land, Captain Cook ordered a boat ashore, to examine what it produced. When she returned in the afternoon, the officer who commanded her said, he saw some grass, and other small plants, one of which had the appearance of purslain ; but the island produced neither trees nor shrubs.

The wind blew fresh at south, in the night ; but in the morning was more moderate, and the fog, in a great degree, dispersed. We weighed at seven o'clock, and steered between the island near which we had anchored, and a small one not far from it. The breadth of the channel does not exceed a mile, and the wind failed before we  
could

could pass through it ; we were therefore obliged to anchor, which we did in thirty-four fathoms water. Land now presented itself in every direction. That to the south extended, in a ridge of mountains, to the south-west ; which we afterwards found to be an island called *Oonalashka*.

Between this island, and the land to the north, which we supposed to be a group of islands, there appeared to be a channel in a north-west direction. On a point, west from the ship, and at the distance of three quarters of a mile, we perceived several natives and their habitations. To this place we saw two whales towed in, which we supposed had just been killed. A few of the inhabitants, occasionally, came off to the ships, and engaged in a little traffic with our people, but never continued with us above a quarter of an hour at a time. They seemed, indeed, remarkably shy ; though we could readily discover they were not unacquainted with vessels, similar, in some degree, to ours. Their manner displayed a degree of politeness which we had never experienced among any of the savage tribes.

About one in the afternoon, being favoured with a light breeze, and the tide of flood, we weighed, and proceeded to the channel last mentioned ; expecting, when we had passed through, either to find the land trend away to the northward ; or that we should discover a passage out to sea, to the west. For we did not suppose ourselves to



be in an inlet of the continent, but among islands; and we were right in our conjectures. Soon after we got under sail, the wind veered to the north, and we were obliged to ply. The depth of water was from forty to twenty-seven fathoms. In the evening, the ebb made it necessary for us to anchor within three leagues of our last station.

We weighed the next morning at day-break, and were wafted up the passage by a light breeze at south; after which we had variable light airs from all directions. There was, however, a rapid tide in our favour, and the *Resolution* got through before the ebb made. The *Discovery* was not equally fortunate, for she was carried back, got into the race, and found a difficulty in getting clear of it.

Being now through the channel, we found the land, on one side, trending west and south-west, and that on the other side to north. This encouraged us to hope, that the continent had taken a new direction in our favour. Being short of water, and expecting to be driven about in a rapid tide, without wind sufficient to govern the ship, we stood for a harbour the south side of the passage, but were driven beyond it; and, that we might not be forced back through the passage, anchored near the southern shore, in twenty-eight fathoms water, and out of the reach of the strong tide; though, even here, it ran five knots and an half in an hour.

In

In this situation, we were visited by several of the natives, in separate canoes. They bartered some fishing implements for tobacco. A young man, among them, overfet his canoe, while he was along-side of one of our boats. He was caught hold of by one of our people, but the canoe was taken up by another and carried ashore. In consequence of this accident, the youth was obliged to come into the ship, where he was invited into the cabin, and readily accepted the invitation, without any surprize or embarrassment. He had on an upper garment, resembling a shirt, made of the gut of a whale, or some other large sea-animal. Under this, he had another of the same form, made of the skins of birds with the feathers on, curiously sewed together; the feathered side placed next his skin. It was patched with several pieces of silk stuff, and his cap was embellished with glass beads.

His cloaths being wet, we furnished him with some of our own, which he put on with as much readiness as we could have done. From the behaviour of this youth, and that of several others, it evidently appeared, that these people were no strangers to Europeans, and to many of their customs. Something in our ships, however, greatly excited their curiosity; for, such as had not canoes to bring them off, assembled on the neighbouring hills to have a view of them.

At

At low water we towed the ship into the harbour, where we anchored in nine fathoms water, the Discovery arriving soon after. A boat was sent to draw the seine, but we caught only a few trout, and some other small fish.

We had not long anchored, before a native of the island brought another note on board, similar to that which had been given to Captain Clerke. He presented it to Captain Cook; but, as it was written in the Russian language, neither he, nor any of us, could read it. As it could not be of any use to us, and might probably be of consequence to others, the Commodore returned it to the bearer, accompanied with a few presents; for which he expressed his thanks, as he retired, by several low bows.

On the 29th, we saw along the shore, a group of the natives of both sexes, seated on the grass, partaking of a repast of raw fish, which they seemed to relish exceedingly.

We were detained by thick fogs, and a contrary wind, till the 2d of July; during which time we acquired some knowledge of the country, as well as of its inhabitants; the particulars of which shall be hereafter related.

This harbour is called *Samganoobba*, by the natives, and is situated on the north side of Oonalashka, the latitude being  $53^{\circ} 55'$ , the longitude  $193^{\circ} 30'$ ; and in the strait which separates this island from those to the north, It is about  
a mile

a mile broad at the entrance, and runs in about four miles south by west. It narrows towards the head, the breadth there not exceeding a quarter of a mile. Plenty of good water may be procured here, but not a piece of wood of any kind.

THE END OF THE SECOND VOLUME.